

# LATIN

## Our Living Heritage

### BOOK II

Teacher's Guide and Answer Key



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2009

# LATIN: Our Living Heritage (Book II)

## PREFACE

The Teacher's Guide and Answer Key to *Latin: Our Living Heritage*, Book II, is intended to supplement the text by providing, in concise form, a wealth of material that the individual teacher could compile only over an extended period of time.

For the convenience of the teacher, the guide presents an accurate translation of all exercises and reading selections in the text, including the passages from Livy and Nepos, Caesar, Ovid, Gellius, Cicero, Pliny, Horace, and Jerome which appear in Part Two. Accuracy and clarity of expression have been the goals in the translation of all exercises and reading selections. Although an effort has been made to create an idiomatic translation, the literal version has frequently been included in order to emphasize the Latin syntax. Throughout the guide, suggestions for alternate translations are given. These suggestions by no means exhaust the possible interpretations, but represent those translations which are most consistent with the vocabulary and grammar of the lessons. The guide presents the material in the order of the text, and is keyed to the text through the use of section numbers. Unless otherwise indicated, section numbers refer to *Latin: Our Living Heritage*, Book II.

The guide to Book II is designed to be used not merely as a key to translations, but as a source of information pertaining to the entire Latin curriculum. The following components of the guide are especially worthy of note:

1. SUGGESTIONS TO THE TEACHER. Throughout the text, situations arise wherein further explanation of complex grammatical principles is helpful. The guide focuses upon the more important of these areas. Notes to the teacher, appended to the translations of exercises and the reading selections, clarify complex or controversial grammatical constructions. In addition, information concerning the excerpt is given. The excerpt usually contains at least one example of the syntactical principle of the lesson and provides an illustration which may be used to introduce the grammar.

Standard Book Number 675-06295-0

Copyright, 1969, by CHARLES E. MERRILL PUBLISHING COMPANY,  
A Bell & Howell Company, Columbus, Ohio 43216  
Printed in U.S.A.

2. WORD STUDY. Derivative study is considered an integral part of the Latin curriculum. For this reason, sections devoted to the study of derivatives have been included at regular intervals throughout the student's text. Further suggestions for English derivative work are included in the guide, which may be used in connection with vocabulary study and the word study sections of the text.

3. REFERENCE WORKS. A list of reference works has been included. This bibliography should serve as an excellent point of departure for classroom projects and for outside reading. The bibliography is arranged to indicate those books which may be read most profitably by the student, and those most suitable for the teacher. Within the individual lessons of the guide, pertinent references follow the majority of the Latin readings. These sections sometimes indicate the Latin source from which the reading is taken and sometimes suggest specific assignments for outside reading, based upon the books listed in the bibliography, that may be made in connection with the selection read.

4. TEACHER'S NOTES. Blank pages are provided on pp. 68-70 and on pp. 148-150 for the teacher's notes and comments.

It is the hope of the authors that the guide will conserve time for the teacher and that it will enrich the Latin program by providing the students deeper insight into Roman life and culture.

The authors wish to acknowledge the work of Kenneth R. Evans, a teacher of Latin at the Columbus Academy, who prepared the exercises for *Latin: Our Living Heritage* Book Two.

Mary A. Barrett



## LESSON ONE

### PART ONE

# Lessons in Grammar

## LESSON ONE

### Excerpt

*De Rerum Natura*, an epic poem of six books, in dactylic hexameter, treats of the universe. Based on Epicurean principles derived from the atomic theory of the Greek philosophers, Leucippus and Democritus, its theme is disbelief in divine agency in human affairs.

The quoted lines show that men have placed the homes of the gods in the sky because of natural phenomena.

T. Lucretius Carus (B.C. 99-c. 55) developed the rough Latin hexameter of Ennius into a strong and noble verse. His poetic achievement laid the groundwork for Vergil.

### 1 Cupid and Psyche (Part 1)

There lived in an ancient city (state) a certain king and queen. They had three daughters, of whom the youngest, named Psyche, was both good and beautiful. Whenever Psyche was seen, citizens and strangers praised the girl's beauty. And already there was a rumor that the goddess Venus herself had come down from heaven to earth.

While everyone was praising Psyche, no one was going (sailing) to the famous islands where the great temples of Venus were. The goddess, angry at the people, called her son Cupid to her and showed (him) Psyche. Because she was jealous of the girl, she said, "Cupid, shoot a sharp arrow into the body of that girl. Let her fall in love with an ugly man."

Meanwhile Psyche was being seen by all, admired (*lit.* praised) by all; but no one, not king, nor prince, nor (any) of the common people dared to marry the girl because Venus did not like her (*lit.* she was displeasing to Venus).

For many months the two sisters had been engaged to kings and now were queens. But Psyche, because of the jealousy of Venus, sat at home and cried because she was alone.

**References:** Apuleius, *The Golden Ass*. Bulfinch, *Bulfinch's Mythology*, pp. 80-91; Coolidge, *Greek Myths*, pp. 43-57; *Dictionary of Mythology-Folklore and Symbols*, pp. 522-523; Duthie, pp. 36-38; Gayley, pp. 128-139; Guerber, *Myths of Greece and Rome*, pp. 121-130; Hamilton, *Mythology*, pp. 121-134; *Harper's Dictionary of Classical Literature and Antiquities*, pp. 1331-1332; Herzberg, pp. 81-88; *Larousse Encyclopedia of Mythology*, pp. 149-150; Rose, pp. 286-288; Sabin, pp. 183-185; *Standard Dictionary of Folklore, Mythology and Legend*, pp. 269-270; *The New Century Classical Handbook*, pp. 342-343 and p. 941.

2 (a) This review provides an opportunity to note the similarities and differences in the declensions and the logical way in which nouns are formed. Have the endings of the declensions placed in parallel columns at the board.

5 The following words will emphasize the relationship of the English word to the Latin and will highlight the force of the prepositional prefix: antebellum, circumnavigate, contradict, deportation, interurban, intramural, postscript, submarine, subterranean, superstructure, surtax, transcontinental.

## 6

## EXERCISES

A. 1. hominēs, agrī, lacūs 2. animālia, virōs, adventūs 3. frātribus, captīvīs, exercitibus 4. annīs, fāmīs, rēbus 5. rēgum, mortium, bellōrum

B. 1. puer, vulnus, praesidium 2. temporis, manūs, diēi 3. nautae imperat, patrī pārēmus, amīcō crēdō 4. īnsulam, socium, bellum 5. in manū, ab animālī, dē rē

C. 1. castra, agrōs, ducēs 2. montēs, maria, aciēs 3. exercitū, diē, equō 4. vulnus, rem, īram 5. oppidō, nāve (-ī), marī 6. nōbīscum, mēcum, tēcum 7. amīcīs, cīvītātibus, cīvibus 8. animal, plēbem, spem 9. itinera, corpora, annōs 10. caelō, colle, impetū

D. 1. A stranger came down from the high mountain with the citizens. 2. Toward evening, a large number of ships approached the island. 3. Aroused by anger, I shall send a message (messenger) to that wicked (base) citizen. 4. She was a good girl but she did not please the goddess. 5. I have two sisters, you have two brothers. 6. Psyche, a very beautiful girl, was admired (praised) by all the citizens on account of her beauty.

E. 1. Urbem Rōmam appellābant (appellāvērunt); urbs Rōma ab cīvibus appellābātur (appellāta est). 2. Post iter longum, nautae et corpore et animō erant dēfessī. 3. Es Rōmānus, Mārce, cīvis magnae cīvītātis (reī pūblīcae). 4. Militēs decimae legiōnis Britannīs victōriam imperātōris nūntiābunt. 5. Et Rōmae et Corinthī erant multa et pulchra templa. 6. Cīvēs cīvītātis (reī pūblīcae) filiam rēgīnae semper laudābant. 7. Dea (suum) filium (ad sē) vocāvit et iussit eum puellam sagittā vulnerāre.

## 8

## WORD STUDY

Until the student develops a technique of checking and verifying derivations, it will be best if the word study is done in class and the words checked in the Latin dictionary at that time. Later on, this kind of work may be assigned to the class or to individual interested students, who will report to the class on the information they have gathered.

A derivative notebook, begun on the basis of the lesson word studies, is suggested. From this beginning, individual students may become interested in doing further derivative work on their own. The safest type of work for them to undertake in the early stages of Latin will be an expansion of the derivative material of the lesson, using the same careful approach that is required in the Word Studies.

Adjective	—	Abstract Noun	Adjective	—	Abstract Noun
dignus	—	dignitās	novus	—	novitās
facilis	—	facilitās	proximus	—	proximitās
Noun	—	Derived Abstract Noun	Noun	—	Derived Abstract Noun
servus	—	servitūs	vir	—	virtūs

NOTE: In stems ending in -o or -a, the stem vowel becomes i before -tās.

## LESSON TWO

### Excerpt

The *Aeneid*, an epic poem of twelve books, in dactylic hexameter, traces the voyage of its hero, Aeneas, the legendary ancestor of Rome, from ruined Troy and describes his wars with native Italian tribes—"Tantae mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem!"

The quoted lines are a part of the response Jupiter makes to Venus when she complains that Juno is preventing her son, Aeneas, and his Trojans from reaching Italy and his ultimate destiny.

Publius Vergilius Maro (B.C. 70-19) was the greatest epic poet of Rome and is considered by many the greatest poet of all Latin literature.

### 9 Cupid and Psyche (Part 2)

And so the unhappy father of the girl, a man of great wisdom, came to the oracle of Apollo and from the god sought a husband for the maiden. But Apollo replied, "Do not delay, O king. Immediately take (*lit.* lead) your daughter from the city and place her on top of the mountain. There a husband awaits her. Because the goddess Venus is jealous of your daughter, her husband will not be (a) mortal. A savage and cruel monster, who lives beyond the mountain, will marry the girl."

Frightened by the advice of the god, the king returned home. Sadly he obeyed the god; he did not dare disregard the words of the oracle. At dawn the girl was ready for her fate. Without delay, she was taken by her sorrowful parents to a mountain near the city. There she remained alone for many hours. Finally a gentle breeze of the West Wind picked up Psyche, trembling and weeping, and carried her across the mountain. Before sunset it set the girl down in a flowery valley. Psyche wandered alone in gardens full of

flowers, but she could see no one. Toward evening she came upon a very beautiful palace among the trees. She entered the palace (which was) full of riches.

For many months Psyche lived in the palace. But still no one was seen by the girl. She only heard words and as her maid-servants, she had voices.

Psyche's husband used to come at night. At first the girl was fearful. But her husband soothed her with gentle words. "Don't be afraid," he said. "Although you cannot see me, I swear to you that I am not a monster. Trust me, Psyche."

Psyche trusted her husband and loved him. He always departed before dawn, and the new bride never tried to see him.

NOTE: Observe the translation of *tristis* in line 8. A Latin adjective is frequently best rendered by an English adverb.

10 (a) Again, to clarify verb forms of the different conjugations, have the tenses of the conjugations written in parallel columns at the board. Note similarities (tense signs and personal endings) and differences (stem vowels). Trace the forms tense by tense.

12 Call attention to the active forms of deponent verbs: present and future participles and future infinitive. Mention the fact that the perfect participle, although usually active in meaning, sometimes has a passive meaning.

## 14

## EXERCISES

A. 1. pōnite 2. vīsī sunt 3. verēminī 4. dormiēbant 5. secūtī erāmus  
6. revertuntur 7. responderātis 8. cōnāminī 9. veniēmus 10. aderunt

B. 1. āfuit 2. capit 3. mūniam 4. fac 5. erō 6. ades 7. iace 8. morātus  
sum 9. crēdidistī 10. erit

C. 1. prōgredior 2. vulnerantur 3. mittit 4. audīmus 5. prohibētur  
6. absum 7. morātur 8. sumus 9. tenent 10. partitūr

D. 1. partīt-us, -a sum 2. verit-us, -a est 3. adfuērunt 4. diximus 5.  
fuistī 6. pūnīt-us, -a est 7. vāstāvimus 8. gessit 9. rapuērunt 10. secūt-  
-us, -a es

E. 1. They are advancing with their daughter to the mountains near the city. 2. Carried by a gentle breeze, the girl had reached the royal palace unharmed. 3. After many months the Gauls waged war with the Romans. 4. The sorrowful parents were weeping because the maiden had been snatched away. 5. Terrified by the words of the god, they did not delay. 6. Return before daybreak. 7. We have parents (who are) mindful of us.



8. Why did no one dare to marry Psyche? 9. The king, a man of great wisdom, sought advice from Apollo. 10. Do not go away to the valley.

F. 1. Rōmānī impetum nōn timēbant quod exercitus duārum legiōnum eīs erat *or* quod exercitum duārum legiōnum habēbant. 2. Occāsū sōlis aura virginem sustulit et eam in valle flōreā (flōrum) dēposuit. 3. Propter (Ob) ventum nāvēs ad terram pervenīre nōn poterant. 4. Marītus, labōre dēfessus, sub vesperum domum ambulābat. 5. Rōmae erant multī (virī *or* hominēs) magnae virtūtis (magnā virtūte). 6. Nōlī (Nōlite) dēspērāre dē pāce; omnēs bonī cīvēs pācem cupiunt. 7. Pārē (-te) deō; nōlī (-te) terrērī cōnsiliō eius *or* nōlī (-te) timēre cōnsilium eius. 8. Puella laudātur nec quisquam eam in mātrimonium dūcere audet. 9. Postquam puella in monte relictā est *or* Puellā in monte relictā, parentēs maestī domum reversī sunt (revertērunt). 10. Ea vōcēs audivit nec quemquam vīdit.

NOTE: For the translation of *but no one* in sentence 8, compare Sec. 1, line 15 and for *but . . . no one* in sentence 10, compare Sec. 9, line 16. Ask the students to memorize the following phrases: *neque, and not, but not; nec quisquam, and no one; nec quidquam, and nothing; nec ūllus, and no; nec umquam, and never.*

### SUPPLEMENTARY VERB DRILL

1. sustulerāmus 2. movē 3. mīsistī 4. dēscendite 5. adeste 6. pārēbimus  
7. revertuntur 8. negleget 9. sequere 10. aus-ī, -ae estis 11. sequēbantur  
12. morātus erat 13. incolunt 14. impediēmus 15. vīs-us, -a erō

## LESSON THREE

### Excerpt

An epigram is a short poem dealing with a single subject. The Latin epigram is written in the elegiac meter (*elegiac distich*), consisting of one line of dactylic hexameter followed by a pentameter line.

Thā ī dā | tam tē nū | em || pō tū | is tī, | Flac cē, vī | dē rē?  
tū, pū tō, | quod nōn | est, || Flac cē, vī | dē rē pō | tes.

NOTE: The pentameter line consists of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet.

Latin epigrams vary in subject matter, length and manner of presentation. Many of Martial's epigrams are biting humor and fit the recipe for a good epigram that says it should resemble a bee:

"The body should always be little and sweet,  
And a sting should be left in the tail."

M. Valerius Martialis (A.D. 40-104) was a native of Spain, where he retired from Rome after the death of Domitian. He wrote verses on all sorts of topics, 1561 pieces in all; most of these poems are epigrams.



A little later her husband said, "Psyche, sweetest (and) dear wife, beware of your sisters. They are jealous and will be very dangerous for you. If they can, they will harm you." But Psyche grieved because she wanted to see her parents and her sisters. She neither ate nor slept. And so against his will, her husband sent the West Wind, who carried the two sisters to the palace. Psyche was glad to see her sisters (*lit.* saw her sisters with great eagerness). She prepared food and drink for them. When, however, her sisters saw Psyche's wealth, they were very envious and privately formed a wicked plan. "Who is your husband?" they asked. "Where is he?" She (Psyche) answered, "He is a handsome young man. Now he is busy hunting in the mountains." Not much later the wind brought back the sisters, laden with gold and jewels.

When the sisters returned to Psyche's palace after several days, one said, "What did the oracle say? Didn't it say that your husband would be a monster? He is a huge serpent who lives in the swamps. The farmers tell many stories about this serpent. They have seen him returning home toward evening." "I have never seen my husband's face with my own eyes," replied poor Psyche. "What am I to do?"

Then the jealous women ordered their sister to undertake this plan. "At night take a sharp sword and a lamp. By the light of the lamp, you will be able to see your husband. If he is a serpent, kill him with the sword at once. Do not hesitate."

18 Review the word order of the complex sentence in which the common subject of the principal and subordinate clause stands before both:

**Sorōrēs, ubi dīvitias Psȳchēs vīdērunt, multum invidēbant.  
Flūmen, quamquam erat lātum, nōn erat altum.  
Psȳchē, sī marītum āmiserit, maesta erit.**

## 21

## EXERCISES

A. 1. est; potest; poterat *or* potuit 2. erāmus *or* fuimus; poterāmus *or* potuimus; poterāmus *or* potuimus 3. estis; potestis; potestis 4. erit; poterit; fuerit 5. fuisti; potuisti; potuerās 6. possunt; poterant *or* potuerunt; erunt 7. fuerāmus; potuerāmus; potuimus 8. sunt; possunt; poterant *or* potuerunt 9. sum; possum; poteram *or* potui 10. nōn possumus; nōn poterāmus *or* potuimus; poterimus

B. 1. adit, adīmus, adiērunt 2. exeunt, exībunt, exierant 3. abiimus, abeunt, abīmus 4. init, inībat, ineunt

C. 1. trāseuntem, trāseuntēs 2. ineuntem, ineuntēs 3. redī, redīte 4. exīre, adiisse 5. redīre, periisse

D. 1. Who can do this? 2. What had the farmers seen? 3. Return home toward evening. 4. Do not enter; we are busy. 5. They did not all perish, did they? Nearly all perished. 6. We shall grieve if the penalty is severe. 7. As soon as the sisters saw Psyche, they asked, "Where is your husband?" 8. The jealous women privately formed an evil plan. 9. If she does not take a lamp, she will not be able to see her husband. 10. This advice is a great help to some, a great hindrance to others.

E. 1. Psýchē erat puella pulchra et dulcis. 2. Ante oculōs omnium stābat Cupīdō, adulēscēns pulcher. 3. Agricolae, ubi animal vīdērunt, paulum sē recēpērunt. 4. Cūr, Cupīdō, ex rēgiā primā lūce exīs? 5. Mediā nocte Psýchē gladium et lucernam cēpit. 6. Sorōrēs dolēbant quod aurum amīserant. 7. Haud multō postea, dum mea māter mēcum prope portam stat, meus pater in cōnspectum subitō vēnit. 8. Postquam nāvem cōnscendimus, ad Britanniam nāvigāvimus; aura lēnis magnō ūsuī nōbīs erat. 9. Quamquam palūdēs iter nostrum impediēbant, ad urbem ante merīdiem pervenīre cōnātī sumus. 10. Sī satis cibī parāverimus, omnēs liberī nostrī erunt laetī; sine cibō omnēs multum dolēbunt.

## 23

## WORD STUDY

Latin Adjective	English Adjective	—	Meaning
cōpiōsus	copious	—	plenteous, ample
fābulōsus	fabulous	—	occurring in fables <i>or</i> having the exaggeration of a fable
fāmōsus	famous	—	renowned, celebrated
studiōsus	studious	—	given to the gaining of knowledge
verbōsus	verbose	—	wordy

The student needs to be made aware of changes in meaning or connotation that may occur in the transference of words from Latin to English. Expansion of meaning (*generalization*) and restriction of meaning (*specialization*) should be considered. For example, English *studious* in its common meaning is a restriction of Latin *studiōsus*.

## LESSON FOUR

### Excerpt

The short poem from which these lines are taken is written in an 11-syllabled meter called Phalaecean meter:

Gṛā tī | ās tī bī | māx ī | mās Čā | tūl lūs

Gaius Valerius Catullus (B.C. 84-54) was a native of Verona. He was a younger contemporary of Cicero and moved in the same society at Rome. Since, however, nothing is known of the relationship of the two men, it is useless to speculate as to whether the poem is ironic or a sincere expression of gratitude and admiration.

Night was near and her husband had arrived at the palace. Soon he had fallen into a deep sleep. Psyche took a sword and a lamp. As soon as she saw her husband, more handsome than anyone could believe, so gentle, so mild, the great (*lit. that*) Cupid himself, and his bow and arrows, she was astonished. While Psyche was in confusion, a drop of scalding oil fell from the lamp onto the shoulder of the god. Cupid, immediately awakened from sleep, saw Psyche (who was) holding the lamp.

Angrily he snatched the lamp from his wife's hands. He said, "Unmindful of the words of my mother, Venus, I fell in love with you (*lit. loved you*), Psyche. I made you my wife. With you I hoped for (very) many joys. But you did not trust me. Your sisters will pay the penalty. You I shall punish only by my flight." And he left.

Wretched and abandoned, Psyche wandered far away, looking for her husband. Finally she reached a large villa where one of her sisters lived. "Why have you come here?" said the queen. "What have you done?" "I did what you told (*lit. ordered*) me. At night I took a sword and a lamp. As soon as I caught a glimpse of my husband's face, I saw a marvelous sight, that great son of Venus, Cupid himself, the most handsome of the immortal gods. He awoke from sleep and angrily left me. In a loud voice he shouted that he would marry my sister. Driven out of the palace, I have come to you."

At these words, the queen, rejoicing, hurried to the top of the mountain and jumped down. She said, "Cupid, receive me, a wife much more worthy of you. And you, Zephyrus, carry me to the palace of Cupid." But the West Wind was not there. In this way she perished.

Next poor Psyche went to her other sister. To her she spoke (*lit. made*) these words, "I have seen my husband's face. He is not a monster, but a god, more handsome than all the kings of earth. I, however, am no longer pleasing to him. He wants to have you for his wife."

The second sister, trusting Psyche's words, jumped from the mountain. She fell onto large rocks. And so she too perished.

26 The following words are related by derivation to the adjectives of this lesson: accelerate, ameliorate, celerity, et cetera, fortissimo, humility, majority, mediocre, minority, omnipotent, omniscient, pessimism, plurality, posterity, proximity.

Ask the students to define the words or to use them in sentences. Many of the words will suggest others of similar derivation.

## 31

## EXERCISES

A. 1. summās, summīs 2. īmum, īmō 3. reliquum, reliquae 4. omnēs, omnēs 5. tōtā, tōtā

B. 1. certiōrem fēcit, certiōrēs fēcit, certiōrēs fēcit 2. certiōrēs faciunt, certiōrēs faciunt, certiōrem faciunt 3. certiōrēs fact-ī, -ae sumus, certiōrēs factae sunt, certiōrēs fact-ī, -ae estis 4. certiōrem faciet, certiōrēs faciet, certiōrem faciet 5. certior fact-us, -a sum, certiōrēs factae sunt, certior facta est

C. 1. a more (rather) slender girl, very slender maidens 2. the following month, the last day 3. the smallest villa, a more beautiful lamp 4. from the bottom of the sea, on the top of the mountain 5. very similar trees, better stories 6. on a rather high (higher) hill, with a most wonderful husband 7. with the slightest breeze, of the very bad citizens 8. the rest of the citizens, in the middle of a swamp 9. a wicked monster, the best state 10. a very happy husband, the immortal gods

D. 1. mīrissimum 2. pulcherrimus 3. vehementior 4. optimus 5. reliquae *or* cēterae 6. posterus *or* proximus 7. melior 8. laetissima *or* fēlicissima 9. minor 10. trīstissimae *or* maestissimae

E. 1. I shall hurry to my father's villa by the Appian Way. 2. The joy of the immortal gods was very great. 3. Unmindful of the words of Venus, Cupid fell in love with a mortal maiden. 4. Very forlorn, Psyche wandered far away, seeking her most beloved husband. 5. This leader was much more cruel toward the very bad soldiers than that one. 6. As long as Cupid had Psyche as his wife, Psyche was very happy. 7. If they inform me of danger, I shall not be unmindful of (my) duty. 8. The sea is deeper than the deepest rivers.

F. 1. Nōne templa Rōmāna multō ampliōra templīs (quam templa) Graecōrum erant? 2. Dux suīs (virīs) semper cōfidēbat quod immemorēs officiī numquam erant. 3. Psȳchē, postquam per tōtum rēgnum errāvit, ad maximam urbem in quā ūna ex malīs sorōribus incolēbat pervēnit. 4. Faciem meī marītī, Cupīdinis ipsius, pulchriōrem faciē (quam faciem) Iovis cōspexī. 5. Rēgīna, simul atque haec verba audīvit, ad summum montem properāvit. 6. Sorōrēs ab morte nōn ēreptae sunt ubi dē altō monte dēsiluērunt. 7. Psȳchē suās sorōrēs certiōrēs dē irā marītī suī, Cupīdinis, fēcit. 8. Quā dē causā lēgātus militēs amīcōs suōs facere cupiēbat?

### 33

### WORD STUDY

Latin	Latin	English	
Noun	— Adjective	Adjective	— Meaning
corpus	— corporālis	corporal	— belonging to the body
fōrma	— fōrmālis	formal	— pertaining to form <i>or</i> convention
genus	— generālis	general	— pertaining to the whole, not local

Latin Noun	Latin — Adjective	English Adjective	— Meaning
marītus	— marītālis	marital	— pertaining to a husband <i>or</i> marriage
nātūra	— nātūrālis	natural	— innate, pertaining to nature
officium	— officiālis	official	— pertaining to an office <i>or</i> position
poena	— poenālis	penal	— pertaining to punishment <i>or</i> penalty
rēx	— rēgālis	regal	— pertaining to <i>or</i> like a king
terminus	— terminālis	terminal	— pertaining to a term, concluding
verbum	— verbālis	verbal	— pertaining to words

NOTE: Observe change in meaning. English *formal* does not have the meaning of *beauty* that Latin *fōrma* does and English *general* has only the expanded meaning of Latin *generālis*.

## LESSON FIVE

### Excerpt

*Eunuchus* is a typical Terentian comedy, interweaving the stories of two sets of lovers. It takes its title from the fact that one of the lovers, Chaerea, disguises himself as a eunuch to gain entry into the house where his beloved has been taken. The lines quoted are the reply of Phaedria, the other lover, to his mistress when she asks him to leave and go to the country.

Publius Terentius Afer (B.C. c. 190-159) is supposed to have been a native of Carthage who was brought to Rome as a slave and afterward freed. In Rome he became a member of a group of young nobles interested in literature; this group was known as “the Scipionic circle” from the fact that it centered around Scipio Africanus the Younger.

The works of Terence consist of six comedies, based on originals of the Greek writers of New Comedy, notably Menander.

### 34

### Cupid and Psyche (Part 5)

Meanwhile Cupid, suffering from his wound, had left home. He stayed for many days in his mother’s palace. When Venus heard about her son’s wound, she was very angry and she tried to find Psyche.

After she had wandered very long and far through many lands, Psyche herself reached a shady grove. There, there was a sacred spring, the home of nymphs, and an ancient temple of the goddess Ceres. At the altar of the



goddess, Psyche stayed for many hours. With all (kinds of) prayers she petitioned the good goddess. Although Ceres and afterward Juno too were very friendly and encouraged Psyche greatly, they were not able to help (*lit.* be as a help to) the poor girl. Thus Psyche decided to go to Venus herself. From the first hour (of the day) till noon she walked many miles. At last she reached the palace of the goddess.

First the goddess ordered her maids to punish Psyche; next she ordered the girl to undertake a very difficult task. In the palace was a supply of wheat and millet and other grains (all) mixed together. "Do you see these thousands of grains?" said the cruel goddess. "Separate them all before dawn; put each separate (*lit.* one) kind in a heap. Tomorrow I shall return at the first hour. Unless the whole task has been finished, I will punish you severely." The task was much too difficult. What was Psyche to do?

Soon, however, an ant, seeing Psyche's grief, called all the ants together. She said, "Psyche has not deserved this punishment. We shall be able to aid (*lit.* be as aid to) the poor girl. Let us help her." Therefore as many ants as possible undertook the task. Because they were trained in this kind of work, the ants very quickly separated all the grains. By dawn the job had been finished.

36 Remind the students that many Latin adverbs are not compared: *semper, hodiē, hīc, satis.*

#### 43

#### EXERCISES

A. 1. ad urbem, domum, Rōmam 2. in urbe, rūri, Corinthī 3. ab urbe, domō, Corinthō 4. domī, Rōmae, in oppidō 5. in rēgiam, rūs, in villam

B. 1. primā lūce; ante occāsum sōlis 2. duōbus diēbus *or* bīduō; duōs *or* duo diēs *or* bīduum 3. ante merīdiem; tribus diēbus *or* trīduō 4. trēs hōrās; tertiā hōrā 5. quattuor annīs; quattuor annōs

C. 1. duōbus puerīs; duōbus milibus puerōrum 2. ūnum ex virīs; centum ex virīs 3. mille formīcae; multa milia formicārum 4. duae ancillae; ūna ex ancillis 5. ducentōs militēs; tria milia militum

D. 1. We shall find (the) gold tomorrow. 2. He trained the forces most (very much). 3. It is a more suitable time. 4. He gave the money rather freely. 5. He deserved more. 6. They (have) fought very fiercely. 7. They (have) delayed longer (too long). 8. They worked very well (best).

E. 1. celerrimē 2. quam celerrimē 3. diūtius 4. parum 5. minimē 6. minimē 7. quam facillimē 8. propius 9. plūs 10. audācter

F. 1. Because the young men were not terrified in the least, they deserved a large reward. 2. When Venus heard about Cupid's injury, she came as



fast as possible to aid her son. 3. We cannot undertake this work which is much too difficult *or* because it is much too difficult. 4. Psyche walked long and far; at length the handmaids of the goddess punished her cruelly. 5. Many thousands of the ants assumed the most difficult task and completed it very easily within one night. 6. The supply of grains was three feet high and seven feet wide.

G. 1. Ūna ex formīcīs erat multō maior cēterīs (quam cēterae). 2. Difficillima pars operis tribus diēbus (trīduō) cōfecta est. 3. Cerēs, quamquam erat amīcissima, miserae puellae auxiliō esse nōn poterat. 4. Corinthī diūtius morābāmur; ergō omnīnō trēs diēs (trīduum) Rōmae manēre poterāmus. 5. Sic Brundisiō quam primum discēdēmus et Rōmam sōlis occāsū perveniēmus. 6. Psȳchē, postquam multa mīlia passuum errāvit, tandem ad templum Veneris, māttris Cupīdinis, vēnit. 7. Dum Psȳchē opus cōficere cōnātur, tria mīlia formīcārum auxiliō miserae puellae vērunt.

## 45

## WORD STUDY

**concupiō:** take *or* lay hold of completely, take in completely; conceive, imagine; comprise; announce in formal terms

**percipiō:** take thoroughly, lay hold of completely; understand; hear, learn; harvest

Although the general meanings are the same, in the specialized meanings, there exists not only the same difference that exists in English between *conceive* and *perceive* but a difference in the technical use of the words, *announce in formal terms* and *harvest*.

**committō:** put together, unite; get going; entrust

**permittō:** let go through, let go; allow, permit; give up, surrender

The connection of meaning is primarily in the meanings of *entrust* and *surrender*.

**conturbō:** throw into disorder *or* confusion, derange utterly

**perturbō:** throw into confusion *or* disorder

There is no real difference in meaning.

**convertō:** make to turn completely around *or* back; change, transform; turn intently (toward something)

**ēvertō:** turn out, overturn; overthrow, destroy

Of the two, **ēvertō** has a specialized meaning.

**excitō:** rouse out, wake up; make to rise, raise; arouse, cheer up

**incitō:** set in rapid motion, urge forward, hasten; rouse, spur; stir up

Besides the difference in the direction of the general meaning (*out* vs. *in*), the specialized meaning of **excitō** has a good sense, that of **incitō**, a bad sense.

## LESSON SIX

### Excerpt

The brother of Catullus has died in Asia. The portion of poem 68 quoted here expresses the poet's love and grief at his loss. These same emotions are the theme of poem 101, the beautiful "Ave atque Vale."

Catullus 68 is written in the elegiac meter or elegiac distich, also the meter of the Latin epigram as explained in Lesson Three of the Teacher's Guide.

46

### Cupid and Psyche (Part 6)

On the following day the goddess, still angry, called Psyche to her again. "Psyche," she said, "listen to my commands. These are the things that I order you (to do). Do you see that grove which is across the river? There are many sheep wandering there whose wool is of gold. Bring me a supply of that golden fleece. Unless you do this, you will never see your husband."

Poor Psyche completely despaired of her situation and earnestly wished to die. Almost mad with grief, she wandered slowly in the fields. Finally she reached the bank of the river. She intended to throw herself into the water. A reed, however, that was growing on the river bank said, "Don't defile my sacred waters (*lit.* waves) with your most unhappy death, Psyche; do not despair. Indeed it is very dangerous (*lit.* of great danger) to enter the grove now, for, because of the heat of the sun, those sheep are fiercer than lions. No one calms their anger or soothes their tempers, for no shepherd has been put in charge of them. I cannot help you but I shall give you (some) good advice and in this way you yourself will accomplish what Venus has ordered. At noon the sheep will come to the river, looking for water; afterward, becoming drowsy (*lit.* overcome with sleep), they will sleep. Go into the grove then. On all the briars you will find a lot (*lit.* an abundance) of the golden wool which you will be able to gather easily."

Psyche thanked the reed and, forgetting her sorrow, she obeyed her commands. After noon she entered the grove; she picked the golden fleece from the briars. Toward evening she speedily returned to the palace, carrying the golden wool.

48 Mention that Roman writers sometimes used the first person plural *nōs* for the singular *ego*.

50 Mention *mī* as the vocative singular form of *meus*: *mī fili*, *my son*; *mī amīce*, *my friend*.

51, 54 Note that with the ablative of accompaniment, *cum* is appended to the relative and interrogative pronouns: *quōcum*, *quācum*, *quibuscum*. Cf. *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *nōbīscum*, *vōbīscum*.

55

EXERCISES

A. 1. mea; *mēcum* 2. eius; *suī* 3. *tuīs or* *vestrīs*; *eās*; *sēcum* 4. *vōs*; *vestrās*  
5. *tū*; *tuās* 6. *vestrum*; *vestrī* 7. *tuum*; *ad mē* 8. *sē* 9. *vestrī* 10. *tuā*; *tē*

B. 1. *huius*; *illius* 2. *illās*; *hās* 3. *ille*; *haec* 4. *illōs*; *suā* 5. *hōc*; *hanc*

C. 1. *ipsa*; *idem* 2. *tuum*; *ipsum* 3. *eandem*; *quam* 4. *ipsa*; *eādem*  
5. *ipsa*; *sē*

D. 1. *quae* 2. *quae* 3. *quōs* 4. *quam* 5. *cuius* 6. *quārum* 7. *cui*  
8. *quibus* 9. *quem* 10. *quōcum*

E. 1. Venus ordered Psyche to bring this wool to her; she obeyed. 2. He placed this staff-officer, whom I trust, in charge of that town. 3. As fast as possible, Psyche herself gathered the golden wool that she found on the briars. 4. Venus commanded Psyche to bestir herself. 5. As soon as Cupid had departed, Psyche, forgetting herself, wandered far away. 6. Psyche found the same very fierce sheep. They were not overcome with sleep at all. 7. Unless Psyche hears the words of the reed, she will defile the most sacred waters.

F. 1. *Quī rēx suum populum or suōs dēfendere nōn ausus est?* 2. *Maximā (cum) celeritāte hostēs sē in hās eādem silvās abdiderant.* 3. *In hīs silvīs sunt omnīnō duae viae; utrā puerī vagābantur or errābant?* 4. *Iusserāmus puerōs domum revertī; illī oblītī or immemorēs nostrī nōn pārūerunt.* 5. *Quis vestrum nōbīscum meridiē ibit et hōs virōs ferōcēs oppugnābit?* 6. *Omnia nostra tuae fidei permittō quod tibi cōfidō.* 7. *Ipse illud opus cōficiēs; id quod or ea quae Venus iussit facere poteris.* 8. *Nōlī (-te) inīre (in) illud nemus, nam plūrima animālia ferōcia in illō locō incolunt.*

NOTE: In sentence 2 of exercise F, *in hās eādem silvās* is placed in the accusative case because in this sentence the verb *abdō* implies motion toward the hiding place and therefore uses the *accusative of place to which* (*limit of motion*).

56 The following words are related by derivation to Latin words of the vocabulary: *crescent*, *fluctuate*, *mandate*, *mandatory*, *vagabond*, *vagrancy*. Ask the students to define each word or to use it in a sentence. Ask for an explanation of the Latin phrase *nē plūs ultrā*.

Latin Supine	English Word	—	Relationship
cōnfectum	confection	—	derived from cōnfectiō, a noun formed on the supine stem of cōnficiō
dēfectum	defect	—	as a verb, a direct derivative with the same meaning of <i>revolt</i>
effectum	effect	—	as a verb, a direct derivative with the same meaning of <i>accomplish</i>
praefectum	prefect	—	derived from praefectus, -ī, a noun formed on the supine stem of praeficiō
acceptum	accept	—	a direct derivative with meaning slightly modified
inceptum	inception	—	derived from inceptiō, a noun formed on the supine stem of incipiō
receptum	reception	—	derived from receptiō, a noun formed on the supine stem of recipiō
susceptum	susceptible	—	an English formation, analogous to that of Latin adjectives with the suffix -ibilis, <i>able to be</i>

## LESSON SEVEN

### Excerpt

See Lesson Three of the Teacher's Guide.

### Cupid and Psyche (Part 7)

Although she had received the golden wool, Venus was not satisfied. She was still envious (and) in fear of the beautiful girl. She constantly kept trying to keep Psyche from seeing her husband Cupid again. And so the girl was ordered by the cruel goddess to undertake a third task.

"Do you see the summit of that high mountain from which the dark waters flowing down flood the swamps? Take this pitcher and set out for that mountain. Without delay bring me back a pitcher full of cold water from (*lit. of*) that spring." After saying (*lit. Having said*) these words, she gave the girl the pitcher.

Sad and motionless, Psyche sat for a long time near the door of the palace. Finally she got up, took (up) the pitcher and slowly started out for the mountain, there to find either the water or the end of her life. When she got there, she saw a huge and unapproachable rock. Fierce serpents guarded the spring on all sides. And now the very waters were shouting, "Get out!" and "What are you doing?" and "Run away!" and "You will die!"

While Psyche was hesitating, an eagle, the bird of mighty Jupiter, suddenly cried out: "Do you expect that you will be able to steal even one drop of that most sacred water? You will never be able to accomplish this task (by) yourself. But the father of the gods and the king of men, great (*lit.* that) Jupiter himself, has sent me to help you (*lit.* as a help for you). Give me the pitcher." Saying this, she took the pitcher and flew above the serpents. As quickly as possible she gave the pitcher filled with water back to the girl, spilling not even one drop. Psyche took the pitcher full of water and brought it back to Venus.

NOTES: The noun *forēs* in line 10 is usually found in the plural. It refers to the two panels of the double door.

Observe the present infinitive *posse* in line 18 following *Spērāsne*. The normal construction is the indirect statement with a future infinitive. *Possum*, however, has no future participle or infinitive.

59 In connection with the perfect participle passive, mention *Semper Parātus* as the motto of the United States Coast Guard.

60 Emphasize the many possible ways to translate the ablative absolute construction. Although the literal *the danger having been seen* gives the sense of the construction, its use in English is to be discouraged. Train the students to strive for the smoothest translation in keeping with the context of the rest of the sentence.

61

## EXERCISES

A. 1. Having spoken, the girl departed; the weeping girl went away. 2. He heard the girl talking; he saw the girl sitting there. 3. Psyche set out to fill the urn; Psyche arose about to speak. 4. We said this to him when we saw him; we said these things to him on his return *or* when he was returning. 5. The eagle is about to fill the urn; Psyche is going to carry the urn to Venus. 6. Psyche, fearful of the sheep, was sitting near the grove; Psyche saw an eagle flying. 7. She returned the urn which had been filled with cold water; Psyche was afraid of the flying bird. 8. The urn filled with water was taken by Psyche; the eagle took the urn and filled it.

B. 1. *discēdentem or abeuntem* 2. *timēns or verēns* 3. *complētam* 4. *relictæ* 5. *missa* 6. *verita* 7. *complētam* 8. *complētā* 9. *timentī or verentī* 10. *complētūra*

C. 1. Psyche, having seen the serpents, was very sad. 2. Psyche was no longer unhappy after these words were said. 3. Having caught sight of the eagle, the girl rose from the large rock. 4. When Psyche had been ordered to undertake the task, Venus withdrew to the palace.



D. 1. serpentibus vīsīs 2. hīs verbīs dictīs 3. aquilā cōspectā 4. Psȳchē iussā 5. urnā ab aquilā redditā

E. 1. He brought back the urn filled with icy water. 2. The fierce serpents guarding the fountain frightened the maiden. 3. Having said this (these things), the merchant took into his hands the gold that had been sent. 4. In ancient Gaul men had the power of life and death over their wives and children. 5. During the rule of Romulus *or* When Romulus was ruling, three neighboring states were terrified by false rumors. 6. Those legions, about to march into the mountains, pitched camp near the river.

F. 1. Multīs nūbibus ātribus in caelō vīsīs, nostrae cōpiae prōgrediēbantur. 2. Hīs (rēbus) dictīs, aquila super summum montem ad flūmen celeriter volāvit. 3. Hīs duōbus operibus difficillimīs cōfectīs, Psȳchē ad rēgiam rediit. 4. Urnā aquā complētā, Psȳchē nē ūnam quidem stillam āmīsīt. 5. Psȳchē in ingentī saxō sedēns, serpentibus vīsīs, lacrimāvit. 6. Psȳchē surrēxit et urnam aquā complētā ad Venerem portāvit.

62 The following words are related by derivation to words of the vocabulary: aquiline, atrocious, aviary, eloquent, insurrection, loquacious, resurgent, resurrection, undulate, viable, vital. Use the words in sentences and ask the students to explain the meanings and to suggest other words of similar derivation.

## 63

## WORD STUDY

Latin		English	
Adjective	— Meaning	Adjective	— Meaning
<b>flōridus</b>	— abounding in flowers, bright, gay	<b>florid</b>	— high-colored, flowery
<b>fluidus</b>	— flowing	<b>fluid</b>	— capable of flowing, not stable
<b>placidus</b>	— gentle, quiet	<b>placid</b>	— pleasantly calm, peaceful
<b>rapidus</b>	— tearing away, seizing, swift, hasty	<b>rapid</b>	— occurring with speed
<b>timidus</b>	— fearful	<b>timid</b>	— subject to fear, easily alarmed

In English *florid*, the idea of color, which is secondary in Latin, is the paramount idea and in English *rapid*, the idea of speed is paramount. *Timid* and *placid* have essentially the same meanings as the Latin adjectives from which they are derived. In English, *fluid* is more commonly a noun meaning *a substance that is capable of flowing*.



## LESSON EIGHT

### Excerpt

Since the first six poems of Horace's third book of *Odes* highlight the virtues underlying the greatness of Rome, these odes are called the "Roman Odes." The second one, from which these lines are taken, celebrates the virtues of *patientia*, *endurance*, and *fidēs*, *loyalty*.

Quintus Horatius Flaccus (B.C. 65-8) was born in Venusia, the son of a freedman. After the close of the Civil War, through his patron, Maecenas, he gained entry into Roman society. He became devoted to Augustus and many of his poems glorified the new order. The works of Horace include two books of *Satires*, two of *Epistles*, seventeen short poems called *Epodes*, four books of *Odes* (his greatest work) and the *Carmen Saeculare*, composed for the centennial celebration of B.C. 17.

64

### Cupid and Psyche (Part 8)

Still Venus was not satisfied. She said to the girl, "Do you see this box? Take (*lit.* Carry) it to the kingdom of Pluto and give it to the queen, Proserpina. Say to her, 'Venus hopes that you will give her a small portion of your beauty, for she has lost (*lit.* used up) her own beauty while caring for her sick son and she cannot buy beauty anywhere.'"

This was very difficult for the girl to do, for the most dangerous of all the roads of the world is that road which leads to the lower world.

Terrified because she realized that she was being sent (*lit.* led) to death by the goddess, Psyche sought the tall tower from which she had decided to leap. But the tower encouraged the girl: "Unhappy girl, why are you trying to kill yourself? Spare yourself, listen to me. There is a safe way that I will show you. I will take you to a secret cave which is the entrance to Orcus. Soon you will come to the river Styx where you will find Charon, who will carry you across the water (*lit.* waves) in his boat. Cerberus, a horrible-looking dog (*lit.* a dog of horrible appearance), will try to hinder you from going forward; throw him this sleep-bringing cake."

When Psyche came to Pluto's palace, the queen, Proserpina, on hearing the words of Venus, took the box which she soon returned to the girl. She (the girl) returned happily from Orcus on the same road by which she had descended.

Before she reached the palace of Venus, however, she said, "It is irksome for Venus to get all this beauty. I am foolish if I don't take a little (*lit.* a small portion) for myself."

Saying this, she opened the box. But there was nothing there; there was no beauty but there was a deep sleep. Psyche lay, right on the road, motionless and asleep.

But Cupid, already healed of his wound (*lit.* his wound already healed), flew through a very high window and reached the place where Psyche was

sleeping. With a harmless arrow, he awoke Psyche and said, "Look, you would have died because of your inquisitiveness. But for the moment take the box to my mother; I will take care of the rest."

Having said this, Cupid flew to Olympus. Mighty Jupiter approved of Cupid's case. He ordered Mercury, the messenger of the gods, to bring Psyche to heaven. Jupiter gave the girl (some) nectar. "Drink, Psyche," he said, "and be immortal. Your marriage, Cupid and Psyche, will be eternal."

NOTES: Mention the fact that Mount Olympus, on the borders of Macedonia and Thessaly, was regarded as the home of the gods.

Identify nectar as the drink of the gods, believed to confer immortality.

66 Call attention to the phrases *Esse quam vidēri* and *Humānum est errāre* on page 484 and mention *Labōrāre est ōrāre* as the motto of the Benedictine monks. Note the use of the infinitives in these expressions.

## 70

## EXERCISES

A. 1. I think (that) the girl is returning, (has) returned, will return the urn. 2. I thought (that) the girl was returning, had returned, would return the urn. 3. I say that Psyche is opening, (has) opened, will open the box. 4. I said that Psyche was opening, had opened, would open the box. 5. I say that the box is being opened, has been opened *or* was opened, will be opened by Psyche. 6. I said that the box was being opened, had been opened, would be opened by Psyche. 7. I know that the boys are advancing, (have) advanced, will advance. 8. I knew that the boys were advancing, had advanced, would advance. 9. I say that you do not give, have not given *or* did not give, will not give me gifts. 10. I said that you did not give *or* were not giving, had not given, would not give me gifts. 11. They hope (that) Psyche will capture beauty. 12. They hope (that) Psyche will carry the box to Venus. 13. They hope that Psyche will be pleasing to her husband. 14. I promise you (that) I will be your friend. 15. I promise you (that) they will buy gifts.

B. 1. *prōgredi, prōgressōs esse, prōgressūrōs esse.* 2. *prōgredi, prōgressōs esse, prōgressūrōs esse.* 3. *accēdere or adire, accessisse or adiisse, accessūrōs esse or aditūrōs esse.* 4. *accēdere or adire, accessisse or adiisse, accessūrōs esse or aditūrōs esse.* 5. *iaci or mitti, iactam esse or missam esse.* 6. *iaci or mitti, iactam esse or missam esse.* 7. *sē abdere, sē abdidisse, sē abditūrā esse.* 8. *sē abdere, sē abdidisse, sē abditūrā esse.* 9. *apertūrā esse, parsūrā esse, prōgressūrā esse.* 10. *portātūrā esse, prōgressūrā esse or prōcessūrā esse.*

C. 1. *Puella sēdit.* 2. *Puella sēdit.* 3. *Puella sedet.* 4. *Pyxis portātur.* 5. *Pyxis portāta est.* 6. *(Ego) veniō.* 7. *(Ego) vēnī.* 8. *(Ego) veniam.*

D. 1. *Dea dicit (dixit) Psȳchēn esse pulchram.* 2. *Dea dicit (dixit) Psȳchēn fuisse pulchram.* 3. *Dea dicit (dixit) Psȳchēn pyxidem apertūrā*

esse. 4. Dea dicit (dixit) urnam portārī. 5. Dea dicit (dixit) urnam portatam esse. 6. Dea dicit (dixit) urnam portatum irī. 7. Dea dicit (dixit) sē filium cūrāvisse. 8. Dea dicit (dixit) sē filium cūrātūram esse. 9. Dea dicit (dixit) sē pyxidem cupere. 10. Dea dicit (dixit) sē pyxidem recēpisse.

E. 1. Cupid saw that Psyche was lying in the road. 2. It was very difficult to carry the box from the lower regions. 3. Psyche ought not to open the box. 4. Psyche (has) prepared to proceed to the lower world. 5. She believes (that) Proserpina will give her part of her beauty. 6. The girl hesitated to enter the lower world. 7. The tower kept Psyche from killing herself.

F. 1. Venus negāvit viam futūram esse (fore) difficiliōrem. 2. Psȳchē urnam aquā gelidā complētam portāre cupiēbat. 3. Puellam aegram dē turrī sē iacere erat stultissimum. 4. Venerem Psȳchēn ad Orcum *or* inferōs mittere erat inīquum. 5. Sēcессиōnem ab patriā nostrā efficere dubitāmus. 6. Nescīvit *or* nōn cognōverat tē pollicitum esse tē eis persuādere cōnātūrum *or* temptātūrum esse.

71 Ask the students to give the Latin word to which the italicized word is related by derivation; ask for the meaning of the italicized word as it is used in the phrase: *adjacent* apartments, an *aperture* in the wall, a *canine* tooth, utterly *dejected*, an *injection* of antibiotics, *janitorial* duties, *parsimonious* practices, to *redeem* the coupons, *rejection* slips, to *stultify* the senses.

## LESSON NINE

### Excerpt

For four or five years, Catullus carried on a passionate and often unhappy love affair with the “Lesbia” of his love poems. It is believed that Lesbia was Clodia, the wife of Metellus Celer.

Poem 5, one of the two “kissing” poems, is written in the hendecasyllabic (11-syllabled) meter.

### 73 Cincinnatus the Dictator (Part 1)

During the consulship of Lucius Minucius and Gaius Nautius, the Aequians, breaking a treaty, came into the lands of the allies of the Roman people and, laden with booty, pitched camp on Mt. Algidus. Roman envoys came to this camp, intending to complain about the wrongdoing of the Aequians. The commander-in-chief of the Aequians, who happened to be sitting under an enormous oak (tree), ordered them to address their complaints (*lit.* to complain) to the oak. He said that he himself would be busy with other matters.

“Let us not stay here,” said one of the envoys. “Let us return to the city at once and inform the senators that the Aequians have come into the lands of our allies, are (now) destroying their farms and soon will be at the very gates of Rome. Our dear wives and children are in great danger. Let us not hesitate to rely on courage and to resist the enemy by force of arms (*lit.* by force and by arms).”

When the envoys returned to Rome, the senators conferred with one another. They said, “Let one consul help our allies and lead an army against the Aequians on Mount Algidus, let the other destroy Aequian territory.” With the approval of the senate, the consuls set out.

They could not do what the senate had ordered, for suddenly a new terror arose. A huge army of Sabines comes almost to the walls of Rome; a farmer runs to the gate; he informs the citizens of the approach of the enemy; fear strikes (*lit.* is thrown into) the city.

And so two large armies were enrolled at Rome. Nautius led one against the Sabines and, after pitching camp, began to destroy Sabine territory far and wide with (*lit.* through) small raiding parties. Minucius did not have (*lit.* To Minucius there was not) the same luck or the same force of character, for, after pitching camp not far from the enemy, he engaged in no battle but stayed timidly in camp. When the enemy realized this fact, after attacking the camp in vain at night, they encircled the fortifications on the following day. Five (of the) cavalymen who had been able to escape from the camp, reported that the consul and his army were under siege.

NOTES: Call attention to the phrase **Liberī cārī nostrī uxōrēsque** in line 11. Note the difference in word order in the two languages and the implications of this difference.

Line 12 contains an example of hendiadys, **vī et armīs**, two nouns joined by a connective instead of a noun and a modifier.

Note that the Latin emphasizes the idea of *motion toward* in both phrases **contrā Aequōs** and **in Algidum**, lines 15-16.

References: Livy, III, 27-29. Allen, pp. 56-57; Haaren and Poland, pp. 76-78; *Harper's Dictionary of Classical Literature and Antiquities*, p. 348; Mills, pp. 77-79; Munroe, pp. 38-40; *Smaller Classical Dictionary*, p. 85; *The New Century Classical Handbook*, p. 292.

77 As examples of the jussive subjunctive, the expressions **Cēdant arma togae** (the motto of the state of Wyoming) and **Amor doctrīnae flōreat** may be mentioned. These expressions will show that this form of the verb expresses something willed.

A. 1. comparēmus 2. videantur 3. ēripiat 4. negligātis 5. impediānt  
6. morētur 7. vereāris 8. vagēmur 9. proficīscar 10. doleātis 11. adoriar  
12. probentur 13. sit 14. querāmur 15. obsideās 16. currās 17. abdāmus  
18. prōgrediātur 19. sint 20. iaciam

B. 1. Let this plan be approved. 2. Let them not break the treaty. 3. Let us sit here. 4. Let us run to the fountain. 5. Let him not lose the money. 6. Let us trust them. 7. Let them not complain. 8. Let them advance to that place.

C. 1. Cīvēs prōgrediantur. 2. Nē dēspērēmus. 3. Nē doleat. 4. Cōnscrībantur. 5. Castra adoriāmur *or* oppugnēmus. 6. Socii revertantur *or* redeant. 7. Ianuam aperiāmus. 8. Avēs volent. 9. Nē foedus probēmus. 10. Cīvitātem *or* rem pūblicam vereāmur *or* timeāmus.

D. 1. Let the Aequi not break the treaty. 2. Let him run into the valley with the rest of the boys. 3. Let us come without fear into the fields of the allies of the Roman people. 4. Let the senators send ambassadors to the camp of the Aequi. 5. Let not our dear wives and children be in great danger. 6. Let the other consul with the larger forces help the allies. 7. Let the one consul approve the plan of the other. 8. Let the senators approve the plan of the other consul.

E. 1. Cōsulēs ea quae *or* id quod senātus iussit faciant. 2. Nē nūntiet exercitum circumventum esse. 3. Lūmine lūnae<sup>1</sup> castra Sabīnōrum adoriāmur *or* oppugnēmus. 4. Taceāmus nam ab hostibus nōn longē absumus. 5. Nē propter timōrem proelium facere dubitēmus. 6. Agricola ad portam currat et nūntiet Sabīnōs accēdere. 7. Postquam castra trāns vallem posuit *or* castris . . . positīs, terram *or* agrōs Sabīnōrum longē lātēque vāstāre poterat. 8. Nē Aequi foedus rumpant; foedere ruptō, duōs magnōs exercitūs cōnscrībāmus.

79 Ask the students to explain the italicized word, basing the explanation on the Latin word which gives the derivative: words of *approbation*, *concurrent* problems, the military *conscription* act, a manuscript in *cursive* writing, during the *probationary* period, *querulous* remarks.

Mention the fact that Roman senators in session were often addressed as *patrēs cōscriptī*.

<sup>1</sup> Before assigning the exercises, give the phrase *lūmine lūnae* for *by moonlight*.



Latin Verb	—	Meaning	English	—	Meaning
abiciō, abiectum	—	throw away, degrade	abject ( <i>adj.</i> )	—	utterly humiliating, contemptible
			abject ( <i>obsolete verb</i> )	—	cast aside
dēiciō, dēiectum	—	cast down; deprive, deprive of hope	deject ( <i>verb</i> )	—	dishearten
			dejected ( <i>participle</i> )	—	depressed
ēiciō, ēiectum	—	throw out	eject ( <i>verb</i> )	—	drive out, throw out; evict
iniciō, iniectum	—	throw into	inject ( <i>verb</i> )	—	force into
prōiciō, prōiectum	—	throw forward	project ( <i>verb</i> )	—	propose; throw forward
			project ( <i>noun</i> )	—	something proposed or planned
reiciō, reiectum	—	throw back	reject ( <i>verb</i> )	—	refuse to accept or take; throw away

## LESSON TEN

### Excerpt

The meter is Sapphic and is scanned as follows:

Tī būr | Ār gē | ō || pō sī | tūm cō | lō nō  
 sīt mē | āe sē | dēs || ū tī | nām sē | nec tae,  
 sīt mō | dūs las | sō || mā rīs | et vī | ā rūn  
 mī lī tī | āe que.

See also Lesson Eight of the Teacher's Guide.

### 81

#### Cincinnatus the Dictator (Part 2)

When this thing was reported (*lit.* heard), because there was no hope of protection placed in the consuls, Lucius Quinctius Cincinnatus was, by common consent, at once named dictator, and everything that had to do with the safety of the state was entrusted to him.

The one and only hope of the Roman state, Lucius Quinctius, had a four-acre farm across the Tiber. While Quinctius was plowing his field, envoys sent from the city greeted him as dictator. A ship was prepared for



Quinctius at public expense; when he crossed the river, he was welcomed by his three sons and the majority of the senators.

On the following day, when the dictator came into the forum just before dawn, he named Lucius Tarquinius master of the horse. He ordered shops closed all over the city (*lit.* in the whole city) and then ordered all the soldiers to arm themselves and meet. When he had called the soldiers together, he said, "I wish (*lit.* Would) that the enemy were not advancing; but since they are advancing, what are we to do? Let us all get ready to defend the friends and allies of the Roman state. Unless we wage war bravely, the enemy will soon be here and we shall see the smoke of their fires near the city. You have a leader, skilled in war and mindful of you; follow me. Do not let (*lit.* Let not) our city be lost!"

The dictator himself led the legions; the master of the horse, his (own) cavalry. "Have the standard bearer hasten; let us all follow," the soldiers shouted to one another. At midnight, full of confidence, they arrive at Mt. Algidus and halt, on seeing that they are already near the enemy. Then in the (same) order in which they had been on the march, the whole army surrounded the enemy's camp in a long file and at a given signal all raised a shout. It rises from there over the enemy's camp and reaches the camp of the consul; in the one place it causes terror; in the other, enormous joy.

NOTES: Review the functions of the dictator and the master of the horse. Often in dangerous wars a dictator was appointed. He placed the state under martial law and ruled with absolute authority. He appointed a master of horse (*magister equitum*) to command the cavalry. The dictator's term was limited to six months; it was to his honor to bring the state safely through the crisis and to resign his command at the earliest possible date.

83 Mention that deliberative questions are rhetorical in nature and do not usually anticipate an answer.

## 86

## EXERCISES

A. 1. perdāmur 2. pertinērent 3. claudat 4. adessētis 5. intrēs 6. permitterēs 7. vagārēris 8. sedeāmus 9. emantur 10. dēsiliat 11. possēs 12. adorīrer 13. prōgrediātur 14. dolērem 15. exercērētur 16. placeātis 17. morārēmini 18. invideant 19. proficisceretur 20. impediāmus

B. 1. Let us name Cincinnatus dictator! We shall name Cincinnatus dictator. 2. May our city not be destroyed! Our city will not be destroyed. 3. What are we to do? What were we to do? 4. What is the line of march to do? What was the line of march to do? 5. May you be able to enter! O or Would that you could enter! 6. May you live well! O that you were living well! 7. Let them not follow us! O that they were not following us! 8. May you not entrust the task to him! O or Would that you were not entrusting the task to him!

C. 1. Utinam adesset! Adest. 2. Utinam militēs cōscriberēmus. Militēs cōscribuntur. 3. Urnam emāmus. Urnam emēmus. 4. Nōn timē-bis (-bitis) *or* verē-beris (-biminī). Nē timeāmus *or* vereāmur. 5. Nē cīvēs doleant. Utinam nē cīvēs dolērent. 6. Utinam nē cupidus potestātis esset! Nē cupidus potestātis sit. 7. Dictātor adsit! Utinam dictātor adesset! 8. Eum dictātōrem dēligant *or* dīcant! Utinam eum dictātōrem dēligerent *or* dicerent!

D. 1. Let us come into the forum just before dawn. 2. May our leader always be mindful of us. 3. Meanwhile, while these things were being done, the smoke of fires could be seen at a distance. 4. Having heard this (these things), let us place hope of protection in the consuls. 5. O that these citizens were not greedy for money! 6. Because of the citizens' fear let the doors of the shop be closed. 7. May the citizens not grieve because of the punishment of the consuls. 8. O that the dictator were not forgetful of you! 9. O that the consuls were experienced in war! 10. Let us entrust the affair to Cincinnatus, for we can trust him.

E. 1. Nūllam spem in cōsulibus pōnere possumus. Quid faciāmus? 2. Utinam Cincinnātō omnia permittere possēmus. 3. Cincinnātō dictātōre dictō, nē Aequōs timeāmus *or* vereāmur. 4. Ducem memorem et nostrī et patriae nostrae habēmus. 5. Occāsū sōlis dictātor nōn pervēnerat. Quid facerēmus? 6. Nē probēmus stultam invidiam plēbis. 7. Nē poenam cīvium irātōrum neglegāmus; nostram iram merentur. 8. Ducem memorem vestrī dēlegistis; proficiscāmur cum eō et hostēs opprimāmus.

## LESSON ELEVEN

### Excerpt

*De Officiis* was the latest of Cicero's philosophical works. Book II, from which these lines are taken, treats of expediency. It discusses the *ūtile* as Book I discussed the *honestum*.

Cicero (B.C. 106-43) was a great statesman and an even greater literary figure. A native of Arpinum and son of a Roman *eques*, he became a prominent lawyer at Rome. Although a *novus homō*, a man of no political ancestry, he made his way up the political ladder at Rome, reaching the highest rank, that of consul in B.C. 63. His successful suppression of the Catilinarian conspiracy in that year, even though it led to later unpopularity and exile, always seemed to him his greatest achievement. History, however, has rather acclaimed him as the greatest writer of Latin prose. His works include letters; both forensic and political speeches; rhetorical, political and philosophical treatises. After the civil wars, Cicero, who had enraged Antony by the "Philippics," was among those proscribed by the second Triumvirate. He was murdered by the soldiers of Antony.

When the shouting of the dictator's soldiers was heard, the consul Minucius ordered his men to take up arms and to follow him. At night, battle began (*lit.* was joined); with a shout they signaled to the legions of the dictator that an attack had been made on this side too. In the meantime, while this was going on, the dictator attacked very fiercely. Then the Aequians, with the two armies attacking (them), either turned and fled or sought peace; they were ordered by the consul to go to the dictator. After the Aequians surrendered, the dictator sent them under the yoke.

When the enemy camp had been handed over, the dictator gave all the booty to his own men only. To the troops of the consul, he said, "I wish that you had been braver, soldiers! You yourselves have almost been the booty of the enemy. I shall forbid such soldiers to have any part of the loot."

Then he returned to Rome. The enemy leaders were led before his chariot; the army followed, laden with the booty. At the approach of the soldiers, the crowd of citizens shouted, "Let us give praise to the gods. Let us sacrifice to Jupiter and Juno. Let the rule of the Roman people increase."

On the sixteenth day after he had been named dictator, Quinctius returned to his farm.

NOTE: Refer to the lesson vocabulary for an explanation of *sub iugum mittere*, line 8.

**89-90** Point out the similarity between the perfect and pluperfect tenses of the subjunctive and the corresponding tenses of the indicative in both the active and passive voice.

Explain that use of the verb in the sentence makes it easy to distinguish the future perfect indicative from the perfect subjunctive even when the forms are identical.

## 93

## EXERCISES

A. 1. *dēspērāmus* 2. *morātī sunt* 3. *auxerāmus* 4. *sustulī* 5. *loquēbantur*  
6. *reperiēbāmus* 7. *praesunt* 8. *apertī erant* 9. *questī sunt*

B. 1. *prōgrederentur* 2. *exerceantur* 3. *pertinuissent* 4. *cūrāverim* 5. *possent*  
6. *aggrēssī essēmus* 7. *commiseritis* 8. *placuisse* 9. *permittātur*

C. 1. Try to be braver *or* You are trying to be braver; may you try to be braver. 2. Do not raise a shout; let us raise a shout. 3. Let us not send the Aequi under the yoke; we cannot send the Aequi under the yoke. 4. We were repairing the ships; let us repair the ships. 5. O that the dictator were making sacrifices to the gods; would that the dictator had made sacrifices to the gods! 6. Would that an army were not following; O that the army had not followed! 7. Would that we had not been forbidden to withdraw; O that we were not being forbidden to depart! 8. Let us encourage him; would that we had encouraged him! 9. Let (May) such gifts be given us.

Would that such gifts had been given us! 10. What is Minucius to do? What was Minucius to do?

D. 1. Utinam fortiōrēs fuissēmus; fortēs sīmus. 2. Deīs sacrificēmus; utinam deīs sacrificāvissēmus! 3. Nē cōpia eōrum augeantur *or* crēscant; utinam nē cōpia eōrum auctae essent *or* crēvissent! 4. Militibus suis satis frūmentī det; utinam nē hostibus tantum frūmentī dedisset! 5. Nē hostēs proelium committant; proelium committāmus. 6. Minucium mittant; nōlī (-te) mittere Minucium. 7. Magnus numerus *or* Multitūdō nostrum; trēs ex nōbīs; paucī ex nōbīs. 8. Utinam nē aeger essem; nē aegrī sint! 9. Utinam adventum eius nūntiārent; utinam adventum eius nūntiāvissent! 10. Utinam nē sub iugum mitterēmur; utinam hostēs sub iugum missī essent.

NOTE: The teacher may wish to emphasize the use of *augeō* in sentence 3 of exercise D. Because *augeō* is normally a transitive verb, the intransitive meaning of *increase* (to *grow* or to *become greater*) is conveyed by the passive voice of *augeō* or by the intransitive verb *crēscō*.

E. 1. Few of the attacking soldiers desire to enter the camp *or* Few of the soldiers making the attack desire to enter the camp. 2. Would that they had not led these leaders in front of the dictator's chariot! 3. How much money is the dictator to give the soldiers who (have) seized the camp? 4. Would that we had sacrificed to the gods after the arrival of the troops! 5. Because they have broken the treaty, send the conquered Aequi under the yoke.

F. 1. Castrīs circumventīs *or* Postquam castra circumventa sunt, quid cōsul faceret? 2. Utinam nē ignis magnam partem urbis paene dēlēvisset! 3. Decem milia militum irātōrum ab Cincinnātō sub iugum missa erant. 4. Militēs quī fortēs nōn sunt ūllam partem praedae habēre vetēmus. 5. Quantum terrae *or* agrī eīs est? Plūs terrae *or* agrī paucīs militibus sit.

### SUPPLEMENTARY VERB DRILL

1. vertāmus verterēmus verterīmus vertissēmus	2. prōgrediantur prōgrederentur prōgressī sint prōgressī essent	3. possīs possēs potuerīs potuissēs
4. sedeat sedēret sēderit sēdisset	5. cōnfidātis cōnfiderētis cōnfīs -ī, -ae sītis cōnfīs -ī, -ae essētis	

94 Ask the students to suggest a number of English words derived from *vertō* by addition of a prepositional prefix. Note that English has many words formed on both the present and the supine stems of this verb. Make a list of the words suggested on the board.

Mention the significance of the *Advent* season in the Christian calendar. Ask for an explanation of *peninsula* and a *penultimate syllable*.

Latin			English		
Adjective	—	Meaning	Adjective	—	Meaning
somnulentus	—	sleepy, drowsy	somnolent	—	sleepy, drowsy
succulentus	—	full of juice	succulent	—	juicy, rich in desirable qualities
turbulentus	—	full of trouble <i>or</i> confusion, agitated, stormy, factious	turbulent	—	given to disturbance <i>or</i> disorder, disturbed, tumultuous
virulentus	—	full of poison	virulent	—	actively poisonous, malignant, deadly

There is no essential difference in meaning between the Latin words and their English derivatives.

## LESSON TWELVE

### Excerpt

The *Metamorphoses* of Ovid consists of fifteen books of poems relating miraculous changes of form. The story of Phaethon, from which these lines are taken, tells how the skin of the Africans became black when Phaethon, losing control of his father's horses, let the chariot of the Sun come too close to earth.

Publius Ovidius Naso (B.C. 43-c. A.D. 18) was born in Sulmo, approximately a hundred miles from Rome. Neither a career in law, which his father desired for him, nor politics appealed to Ovid. He entered a life among the smart set at Rome and became its favorite poet. In A.D. 8, for some offense never precisely determined, Ovid was banished to Tomis on the Black Sea. From there he wrote the *Tristia* and *Epistulae ex Ponto*. Among his other works are *Amores*, *Heroides*, *Ars Amatoria*, *Remedia Amoris*, and *Medicamina Faciei Femineae*.

### Hannibal and Antiochus

Once Hannibal, who had waged war with the Romans for many years and had been defeated, was at the palace of King Antiochus. On the field, Antiochus was showing him the very large forces that he had collected to make war on the Roman people. He even brought up chariots with iron scythes and elephants with towers (on their backs) and very many cavalry. And the king, who was glorying in the sight of such a large army, hid his pride with the greatest difficulty. Eager for praise, he wanted Hannibal too to praise the royal troops and said, "Do you think that all this will be enough for the Romans?" Then Hannibal, who knew that the king's soldiers, adorned with a lot of (much) gold, were not brave, though he



would rather have been silent, (said): "I believe that it will be enough, quite enough for the Romans, even though they are excessively greedy."

NOTES: Aulus Gellius (born c. 123 A.D.) in his *Noctes Atticae* wrote short essays on all sorts of topics: literature, language, customs. He also included anecdotes about famous men.

References: Aulus Gellius, *Noctes Atticae*, V, 5. For Antiochus, see: Boak, pp. 127-130; Breasted, pp. 625-628; Myers, *Ancient History*, pp. 290-291, 430; *The New Century Handbook*, p. 113-114. For Hannibal, see: Botsford, *A Source Book of Ancient History*, pp. 383-387; Mills, pp. 146-176; Myers, *Ancient History*, p. 427; Pelham, pp. 137-139; *The New Century Classical Handbook*, pp. 515-516.

97 Mention the expressions **Deus vult** and **Deō volente**.

99

## EXERCISES

A. 1. mālēbant 2. voluerāmus 3. nōn vult 4. vīs 5. māluit 6. nōlēbātis  
7. volumus 8. māluērunt 9. volēbat 10. vult

B. 1. velitis 2. māluissem 3. voluerit 4. nōllēmus 5. mālīt 6. nōluerint  
7. mālīent 8. voluissētis 9. nōlis 10. velimus

C. 1. We prefer to hurl the weapons boldly. 2. Do not return. 3. May they be willing. 4. What are we to prefer? 5. Someone may say that the soldiers are not brave. 6. You could (might) have forced troops to be drawn up. 7. I should like to have the troops halt. 8. Would that he were willing to be silent! 9. Let us praise the forces of Antiochus. 10. May he not sacrifice to the gods.

D. 1. Taceāmus. 2. Prōgredī nōlīmus. 3. Portae oppidī aperiāntur. 4. Quid timeam? 5. Quam poenam merear? 6. Nōn mālīē-s (-tis) dolēre. 7. Mālīnt nōn longē errāre. 8. Adorīrentur or oppugnārent cōpiās rēgis or rēgiās. 9. Utinam nē castra obsidērent! 10. Utinam cōpiae (in) castra intrāvissent.

E. 1. We do not wish to praise the king's soldiers, decorated with much gold. 2. O that you were willing to send us auxiliary forces, Hannibal! 3. Do not come in sight of that army. 4. Let Hannibal restrain his conquered forces from flight. 5. We wish that we had given or We could (should) have wished (liked) to give gold to these nations. 6. The messenger said that Antiochus wished to show Hannibal his chariots and elephants.

F. 1. Viam gladiō aperiāmus. 2. Quantum numerum elephantōrum vīs (vultis) nōs cōgere? 3. Utinam sua arma abicere nōluissent! 4. Cūr Hannibal Antiochum iuvāre velit? 5. Rēge volente, or Quamquam rēx eum ita facere voluit, Hannibal exercitum Antiochī laudāre nōlēbat. 6. Quid Rōmānī facerent postquam sēnsērunt Antiochum hās magnās cōpiās coēgisse?

## SUPPLEMENTARY VERB DRILL

	Indicative	
volumus	nōn vult	māvultis
volēbāmus	nōlēbat	mālēbātis
volēmus	nōlet	mālētis
voluimus	nōluit	māluistis
voluerāmus	nōluerat	māluerātis
voluerimus	nōluerit	mālueritis
	Subjunctive	
velimus	nōlit	mālītis
vellēmus	nōllet	māllētis
voluerīmus	nōluerit	māluerītis
voluissēmus	nōluisset	māluisseis

## LESSON THIRTEEN

### Excerpt

The *Amores* consists of three books of poems in the elegiac meter (elegiac distich). The theme of most of them is an amorous experience, either real or imagined. These lines are from a poem in which an old woman, a sort of witch, gives a girl advice on how to get gifts from a lover.

### 102 Tarquinius Priscus, the Fifth King of the Romans

During the reign of Ancus, Lucumo, an energetic and wealthy man, moved to Rome from Etruria, in hopes of (achieving) the high honor that he was not able to achieve at Tarquinii, because he was a foreigner. At Tarquinii, he had married Tanaquil, a woman of noble (*lit.* very high) birth. Because the Etruscans despised Tarquin as a foreigner, Tanaquil urged her husband to move to Rome, hoping that in the new nation there would be a place for a brave and energetic man. She easily persuaded her husband to leave with her.

And so having got their possessions together, they set out for Rome. As it happened, they had reached Mount Janiculum. There an eagle, swooping gently down, took off the man's cap and, flying over his head, put it back again (on his head). Tanaquil, a woman skilled in (interpreting) portents, is said to have received this omen happily. Embracing her husband, she tells him to hope for a high destiny; (she says) that the eagle has been sent by the gods.

Carrying these hopes and thoughts with them, they entered the city. Having procured a house there, Lucumo soon proclaimed his name (as) Lucius Tarquinius Priscus. His wealth made him distinguished among the Romans.

After Tarquin became a Roman citizen, King Ancus especially trusted and favored him; he took part in public and private meetings at home and on the field of war (*lit.* in war). Finally in the king's will he was even named as guardian for his children.

Ancus reigned for twenty-four years; after Ancus' death the Roman people chose Tarquin as king (*lit.* ordered Tarquin to rule).

**References:** Livy, I, 42, 43, 46-48. Botsford, *The Story of Rome as the Greeks and Romans Tell It*, pp. 49-51; Caldwell, p. 336; *Harper's Dictionary of Classical Literature and Antiquities*, pp. 1525-1527; Mills, pp. 43-48; Myers, *Ancient History*, p. 371; *Smaller Classical Dictionary*, pp. 283-284; *The New Century Classical Handbook*, p. 1052.

104 Explain carefully the difference between **moneō**, *warn to, advise to*, which requires the subjunctive of indirect command, and **moneō**, *warn that, advise that*, which is equivalent to a verb of speaking and which therefore requires the infinitive of indirect statement.

**Monuī nē illam domum emeret.**

I advised him not to buy that house.

**Monuī Italōs urbem obsessūrōs esse.**

I warned *or* advised that the Italians would besiege the city.

## 105

## EXERCISES

A. 1. He enters the city. I advise him to enter the city. I advised him to enter the city. 2. Go home. He is begging you to go home. He begged you not to go home. 3. He is enrolling a legion. We urge him to enroll a legion. We urged him to enroll a legion. 4. He is reigning. They order him to reign. They ordered him to reign. 5. We are silent. He asks us to be silent. He asked us to be silent. 6. You are complaining. He persuades you not to complain. He persuaded you not to complain. 7. The city is being besieged. He orders the city to be besieged. He ordered the city to be besieged. 8. Jump down. He orders the soldiers to jump down. He ordered the soldiers to jump down. 9. The allies are taking a position. He forbids the allies to take a position. He ordered the allies not to take a position. 10. You are grieving. They urge you not to grieve. They urged you not to grieve.

B. 1. dēs; darēs 2. probētur; probārētur 3. probāre; probāre 4. probēs; probārēs 5. morentur; morārentur 6. rēgnāre; rēgnāre 7. cūrētis; cūrārētis 8. aperiātis; aperirētis 9. adipiscātur; adipiscerētur

C. 1. The foreigner demanded that money be given to him. 2. He ordered his men to leave their arms and eagle in the camp. 3. We ordered the

legions not to enter the city. 4. Do you believe that the eagle flying in the sky was sent by the gods? 5. They encouraged us to try to attain freedom. 6. We shall urge them to make an end of the war.

D. 1. Iubēbō eōs proficīscī *or* Eīs imperābō ut proficīscantur. 2. Tē *or* Vōs monueram ut proficīscerē-ris (-minī). 3. Eōs ōrat nē auxilium petant. 4. Sociīs nostrīs persuādere cōnābimur ut prōgrediantur. 5. Ab nōbīs postulāvērunt ut revertāmur *or* redeāmus. 6. Nōs rogāvērunt nē reverterēmur *or* redirēmus. 7. Legiōnēs cohortātī sumus ut iter facerent.

E.		
Indicative		
1. īnstituitis	2. nāscitur	3. ēdunt
īnstituēbātis	nāscēbātur	ēdēbant
īnstituētis	nāscētur	ēdent
īnstituistis	nāt-us, -a est	ēdidērunt
īnstituerātis	nāt-us, -a erat	ēdiderant
īnstitueritis	nāt-us, -a erit	ēdiderint
Subjunctive		
īnstituātis	nāscātur	ēdant
īnstituerētis	nāscerētur	ēderent
īnstituerītis	nāt-us, -a sit	ēdiderint
īnstituissētis	nāt-us, -a esset	ēdidissent

Indicative	
4. ingredimur	5. vetās
ingrediēbāmur	vetābās
ingrediēmur	vetābīs
ingress-ī, -ae sumus	vetuistī
ingress-ī, -ae erāmus	vetuerās
ingress-ī, -ae erimus	vetueris
Subjunctive	
ingrediāmur	vetēs
ingrederēmur	vetārēs
ingress-ī, -ae sīmus	vetuerīs
ingress-ī, -ae essēmus	vetuissēs

106 Ask the students to give the Latin word from which the italicized word is derived and to define or explain the italicized word within the phrase: determined by *augury*, an *egregious* idiot, *ingress* to the vault, *innate* powers, *natal* defects, *postnatal* care, *renascent* interest in the arts, he died *intestate*, *adept* in the manual skills.

Latin Verb	—	Meaning	English Derivative	—	Relationship
<b>aggredior</b>	—	step toward, go to; ad- dress; attack	aggressive	—	adjective formed by adding the suffix <i>-ive</i> to the supine stem of <b>aggredior</b>
<b>congregdior</b>	—	go <i>or</i> come together, meet; engage in battle	congress	—	noun from Latin <b>con-</b> <b>gressus</b> , <i>-ūs</i> , <i>a meeting</i> , formed on the supine stem of <b>congregdior</b>
<b>digredior</b>	—	go apart, sep- arate; deviate	digress	—	verb derived from the supine stem of <b>digredior</b>
<b>ēgredior</b>	—	go out, march out; land, disembark	egress	—	noun from Latin <b>ēgressus</b> , <i>-ūs</i> , <i>a depart-</i> <i>ure</i> , formed on the supine stem of <b>ēgredior</b>
<b>ingredior</b>	—	step <i>or</i> go into	ingredient	—	noun from present participle of <b>ingredior</b>
<b>prōgredior</b>	—	step forward, advance	progress	—	verb derived from the supine stem of <b>prō-</b> <b>gredior</b> and noun from Latin <b>prōgressus</b> , <i>-ūs</i> , <i>an advance</i> , formed on the supine stem of <b>prōgredior</b>

NOTE: The story is told that circus owner, P. T. Barnum, who had a low opinion of the intellect of his clientele ("There's a sucker born every minute"), once had a sign set up displaying "This way to the egress." Thousands of patrons, eager to see the strange animal, suddenly found themselves outside the circus grounds.

## LESSON FOURTEEN

### Excerpt

The lines quoted are from the famous "Soracte" ode, so-called from a mountain ridge north of Rome. The ode contrasts the winter snows and icy streams of the mountain with the joys of youth and love and wine in the warmth of the hearth fire. It calls for the enjoyment of the present moment before green youth gives way to white old age. Compare Tennyson's *In Memoriam*, 107.



It was formerly the custom for the senators at Rome to enter the senate-house with their young sons. Whenever a very important matter had been discussed in the senate and postponed to the following day, no one would mention what sort of business it was.

One time the mother of a boy, Papirius, who had been with his father in the senate-house, asked her son what the fathers had discussed in the senate-meeting. The boy said that he could not mention (it). Wondering what the reason for the boy's silence was, the mother kept questioning him more urgently. She gave him no rest.

Then the boy formed this plan. He said that the discussion in the senate had been whether (or not) it seemed more expedient and to the advantage of the state for one man to have two wives or one woman to have two husbands.

On hearing this, his mother rushes to the other married women. The following day a crowd of matrons come to the senate. Weeping, they beg that one man may not have two wives. The senators wondered why the matrons were making this request. Advancing into the middle of the senate-house, Papirius told what his mother had asked and what he, himself, had replied to his mother. The senate praised the trustworthiness of Papirius and after this (episode) allowed no boy except that famous Papirius alone to enter the senate-house.

**Reference:** Aulus Gellius, *Noctes Atticae*, I, 23.

**110** In preparation for study of the indirect question, review the declension of **quis**, Sec. 319; **quī**, Sec. 320; **uter**, Sec. 306. Also compile on the board a list of other common interrogative words such as **cūr**, **quandō**, **quōmodo**, **quā dē causā**, **quibus dē causīs**, **quō**, **unde**.

## 111

## EXERCISES

A. 1. What are the matrons trying to do? I know what the matrons are trying, have tried, will try to do. I knew what the matrons were trying, had tried, would try to do. 2. What are the senators accomplishing in the senate? He asks what the senators are accomplishing, (have) accomplished, are going to accomplish in the senate. He asked what the senators were accomplishing, had accomplished, were going to accomplish in the senate. 3. What is the boy demanding from his mother? Are you asking what the boy demands, (has) demanded, intends to demand from his mother? Did you ask what the boy was demanding, had demanded, intended to demand from his mother? 4. Why are the senators praising the boy? He knows why the senators are praising, (have) praised, will praise the boy. He knew

why the senators were praising, had praised, would praise the boy. 5. Where are the soldiers setting out? I wonder where the soldiers are setting out, (have) set out, are going to set out. I wondered where the soldiers were setting out, had set out, were going to set out.

B. 1. *volet, volāverit, volātūra sit; volāret, volāvisset, volātūra esset* 2. *habeat, habuerit, habitūra sit; habēret, habuisset, habitūra esset* 3. *oppugnent, oppugnāverint, oppugnātūrī sint; oppugnārent, oppugnāvissent, oppugnātūrī essent* 4. *sit, fuerit, futūrus sit; esset, fuisset, futūrus esset* 5. *querantur, quetae sint, questūrae sint; quererentur, quetae essent, questūrae essent*

C. 1. Tell me what he said. What he said is not true. 2. What they have rescued is huge. He asked what they had rescued. 3. The city in which she lives is Rome. We know in which city she lives. 4. The boy you saw is brave. Tell me which boy you saw. 5. We shall see the town that was taken by storm. I shall show you what town was taken by storm.

D. 1. *nārrat, nārret* 2. *audīvērunt, audīvissent* 3. *adoriuntur or aggrediuntur, adorīrentur or aggrederentur* 4. *ostendit, ostenderet* 5. *incolit or habitat, incolat or habitet*

E. 1. He asked where I was going. He asked me to go. 2. He asked me whom I trusted. He asked me to trust him. 3. They demanded that he advance. They asked where he was advancing. 4. We ask why he is speaking. We are asking him to speak. 5. They asked us why we were silent. They asked us to be silent.

F. 1. He saw where I was going. He saw that I was going. 2. He knew where (to what place) they had set out. He knew that they had set out. 3. He knows what they are saying. He knows that they are speaking. 4. They report that they will storm the town. They report why they intend to storm the town. 5. They reported that the town could not be taken by storm. They disclosed why the town could not be taken by storm.

G. 1. I know from what port those ships are setting out. 2. Having wondered what the cause of this thing was, he asked them. 3. I understand with how great danger he will do it. 4. He learns from a boy there what was discussed in the senate. 5. I wondered whether this had been said by the boy. 6. I wanted to learn whether this plan or the other one was more useful to the state.

H. 1. *Ex nōbīs quaesīvit quō mātrōnae iissent.* 2. *Lacrimantēs (Multis cum lacrimīs) pauperēs nōs ōrāvērunt ut cibō sē iuvārēmus.* 3. *Cognōscere volumus quālēs sint hī senātōrēs.* 4. *Precibus eōrum mōtus, Papīrius dīxit ea quae in senātū ācta erant.* 5. *Scīsne num Rōmae incoluerint Tarquiniō rēge?* 6. *Senātōrēs mīrābantur cūr mātrōnae ōrarent nē ūnus (vīr) duās uxōrēs habēret.*

## LESSON FIFTEEN

### Excerpt

The *Tristia* consists of five books of poems in the elegiac distich. They are mainly concerned with Ovid's misery during the ten years of his exile in Tomis on the Black Sea. Ovid's appeals to Augustus for remission of his sentence were in vain and Tiberius, the successor of Augustus, was, if anything, even more adamant. See also Lesson Twelve of the Teacher's Guide.

### 113

#### On Wives

Xanthippe, wife of the philosopher Socrates, is said to have been ill-tempered and irritable both day and night. It was the custom of this woman to abuse her poor husband. Alcibiades, a friend of the philosopher, wondering how he could live with such a wife, asked Socrates what was the reason that he did not put such a disagreeable woman out of the house.

"Because," said Socrates, "bearing such insults from my wife at home, I become accustomed to bear more easily the injustice of others outside."

Marcus Varro, a Roman author, said, "A husband ought either to put down his wife's faults or put up with them. He who puts them down makes his wife better (*lit.* more agreeable); he who puts up with them makes himself better."

**References:** Aulus Gellius, *Noctes Atticae*, I, 17. Breasted, p. 416; Davis, *Readings in Ancient History: Greece and the East*, pp. 241-242; *Harper's Dictionary of Classical Literature and Antiquities*, pp. 1018-1019, 1473-1475 and p. 1671; Myers, *Ancient History*, pp. 247-248 and pp. 330-331; *Smaller Classical Dictionary*, p. 16, pp. 270-271 and p. 308; *The New Century Classical Handbook*, pp. 63-66 and pp. 1018-1019.

**115** Review the meanings of the prepositional prefixes **ab-**, **ad-**, **con-**, **dē-**, **in-**, **per-**, **prae-**, **re-**. Note the force of the prefix in the compounds of **ferō** and the process of assimilation as shown in these verbs.

### 118

#### EXERCISES

A. 1. he bears, he brings, he takes away 2. he (has) reported, he (has) preferred, he (has) carried back 3. you will carry, you will inflict, you will bring together 4. they are bringing, they carry down, they bring against 5. you were enduring, you removed, you brought word 6. to have borne, to have brought, to have reported 7. bringing against, bearing, bringing 8. you are removing, you report, you are carrying 9. to be brought, to be inflicted, to be collected 10. we are carrying, we shall bear, we had endured

B. 1. ferēbat 2. tulērunt 3. lātus eram 4. fert 5. ferēbāminī 6. memini  
7. ōderant 8. fallēbat 9. cōnsuēvit

C. 1. lātus sit 2. ferant 3. tulissēs 4. ferātur 5. lātus essem 6. ferātis  
7. tulerītis 8. ferrētis 9. lāti essent

D. 1. rettulerant 2. affer 3. fert 4. ferent 5. rediisse 6. ferunt 7. ferēs  
8. licet 9. rettulērunt 10. inferent 11. ōdērunt 12. ōderint 13. cōnsuēvē-  
runt 14. meminerāmus 15. inferte 16. inferentēs 17. licēbat 18. cōn-  
suēverāmus 19. ōderint 20. ōderāmus

E. 1. Caesar permits these barbarians to bear arms. 2. Xanthippe is said to have been an ill-tempered woman. 3. Soldiers are accustomed to bring help to their friends. 4. Will the young men be permitted to bear arms? 5. The soldiers, (having been) driven back, were not permitted to return to camp. 6. They say that the enemy, having been repulsed, are retreating. 7. Why do you hate this man who has never envied you? 8. He remembers everything he (has) heard.

F. 1. Dōna accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuēverant. 2. Auxilium ferentēs captī sunt; auxiliō lātō *or* postquam auxilium tulērunt, captī sunt. 3. Omnia quae suīs amīcīs dicta sunt *or* Omnia suīs amīcīs dicta meminerint. 4. Eōs nōn ōdimus quamquam bellum nōbīs intulērunt. 5. Vōbīs per nōs colloquī licet. 6. Eī per mōrōsās mulierēs ex urbe discēdere nōn licēbat.

119 Ask the students to explain the italicized words in the following phrases: a *commodious* bedroom, *contumelious* language, *licentious* behavior, a *memento* of the occasion, *odious* comparisons, the *rationale* for including notes, a *vitiated* food supply.

## 120

## WORD STUDY

Latin Verb	Meaning	English Verb	Meaning
cōnferō	bring together	confer	grant, bestow; compare views, hold a conference; compare ( <i>only in the imperative cf.</i> )
differō	spread apart	collate	compare critically, examine
		differ	stand apart; disagree
trānsferō	carry across	dilate	distend, enlarge
		transfer	convey from one person, place <i>or</i> thing to another
		translate	bear from one place to another; turn into one's own <i>or</i> another language

The words *cōnferentia*, *dēferentia*, *īnferentia*, *praeferentia*, *referentia* and *trānsferentia* do not actually exist in these forms in Latin. They are theoretical compounds of the present stem of the verb and the suffix *-entia*, formed on analogy with other Latin compounds of the same type, such as *experientia*. Cicero is responsible for the formation of *differentia*, but this is the only one of such compounds of *ferō* that came into being in Latin.

#### English Derivative — Meaning

conference	—	formal consultation <i>or</i> discussion
deference	—	courteous regard for another's wishes
inference	—	act of passing from one judgment to another
preference	—	act of preferring; higher estimation; prior choice
reference	—	act of referring; relation; respect
transference	—	act of transferring, conveyance; passage

## LESSON SIXTEEN

### Excerpt

The *Pro Cluentio* concerns the crimes of the elder Oppianicus and his efforts to bribe the jury that had tried two of his henchmen for the attempted murder of Cluentius. Oppianicus had been convicted and had died in exile. In revenge, Oppianicus' wife had prevailed upon her stepson, the younger Oppianicus, to bring charges of murdering her husband against Cluentius. Cicero, in a brilliant speech, the *Pro Cluentio*, defended his client against this charge.

The complete sentence from which the excerpt is taken is "*Lēgum ministrī magistrātūs, lēgum interpretēs iūdicēs, lēgum dēnique idcirco omnēs servī sumus ut liberī esse possīmus.*"

The highlights of the speech have been selected and edited by Grose-Hodge in a little book called "Murder at Larinum" published by Cambridge University Press, 1953.

See also Lesson Eleven of the Teacher's Guide.

### 121

### Hercules and Cacus

Once, having killed Geryon, the king of Spain, Hercules stole (*lit.* drove away) some cattle of marvelous beauty and came to Italy. After he swam across the Tiber, driving the cattle before him, he reached a grassy spot (the high walls of Rome had not yet been built). He stayed near the river to refresh himself and his cattle. He was not guarding the cattle very carefully, because he was not at all afraid that anyone would steal them.



Then, when sleep overcame Hercules, a shepherd, named Cacus, a man of great strength, captivated by the beauty of the cattle, decided to steal them. So that no footprints might be pointing forward, he dragged eight oxen by their tails backward into his cave.

At dawn, when Hercules awoke from sleep and realized that some (*lit.* a part) of his cattle were missing, he hastened to the nearby cave. After he saw that all the tracks were facing (*lit.* turned) away from the cave, confused (*lit.* uncertain of mind), he began to drive the rest of his cattle away from that place. At the departure, the cattle began to moo; then a heifer, hidden in the cave, returned the cry. On hearing it, Hercules hurried to the cave. Cacus, trying to stop Hercules by force, was killed with a club. So because all of his cattle had been saved, in the grove Hercules set up an altar, called by the Romans the *Ara Maxima*.

NOTES: Place Vergil's reference to the *āra maxima* in the *Aeneid*, VIII, 271-272 on the board:

Hanc āram lūcō statuit, quae maxima semper  
dicētur nōbīs et erit quae maxima semper.

*This altar he set up in a grove—(this altar)  
which shall ever be called by us 'the Greatest,' and  
which shall ever be greatest.*

122 Because the concept of purpose is usually expressed in English by the infinitive, the use of the subjunctive in classical Latin prose will require emphasis.

## 126

## EXERCISES

A. 1. He delays (delayed) to refresh the cattle. 2. They will flee (fled) in order not to be captured. 3. He is sending (sent) soldiers to attack the city. 4. They will choose (chose) a man to lead the troops. 5. We are guarding (guarded) the captives so that nothing may (might) be perceived. 6. They guard (guarded) the soldiers so that they can (could) never flee. 7. So that no traces may (might) be seen, he drags (dragged) the cattle by the tail. 8. He warns (warned) that no one should enter. 9. I persuade (persuaded) the women to advance outside. 10. They persuade (persuaded) the soldiers to be silent.

B. 1. quī oppidum capiant, caperent 2. nē vincāmur, vincerēmur 3. nē umquam dēspērēmus, dēspērārēmus 4. ut urbem custōdiant, custōdīrent 5. ut castra obsideant, obsidērent 6. nē quis relinquātur, relinquerētur 7. ut

prōgrediantur, prōgrederentur 8. nē quis taceat, tacēret 9. nē quid reficiātur, reficerētur 10. nē intrent *or* ingrediantur, intrārent *or* ingrederentur

C. 1. We are fighting to win; we are trying to win. 2. We are fighting lest we be conquered; we were ordered to conquer. 3. He has forbidden them to advance; he gave them rewards in order that they might not advance. 4. The cattle began to moo; they held the cattle back so that they would not moo. 5. He said many things to the women that they might not complain; he said that the women would not complain. 6. He kept the cattle from going out; he dragged the cattle into the cave so that they would not be seen. 7. The eagle is attempting to fly; we free the eagle to fly. 8. He is sending soldiers to attack the town; he is keeping the soldiers from attacking the town.

D. 1. audīre; ut audiās 2. legere; ut legant 3. bovēs abigere; ut bovēs abigat 4. quī pontem rumperent; pontem rumpere 5. dīvītēs esse; ut dīvītēs essent 6. morī; ut morerētur 7. nec cuiquam nocēre; nē cui nocērēmus 8. nūllum periculum facere; nē quod periculum facerem 9. ut domum proficiscāmur; nōs domum proficiscī 10. nōs flūmen trānāre; nōbīs ut flūmen trānārēmus

E. 1. Hercules delayed near the river to refresh the cattle. 2. Without delay Cacus hid the cattle so that no one should find them. 3. Cacus hid in the cave so he would not be captured. 4. He ordered his sons to go away so they would learn nothing of these plans. 5. He will order the captives to be killed so that they may not flee. 6. He chose careful leaders to be in charge of the auxiliary forces.

F. 1. Magnā (cum) vōce locūtus est ut Cacus terreret. 2. Vīgintī duōs equitēs misit quī peditēs fugientēs sequerentur. 3. Urbem maximā cum diligentiā mūnīvērunt nē caperētur. 4. Herculēs virōs dīmisit nē quid dē suis cōsiliīs cognōscerent. 5. Iubēbit portam claudī *or* Imperābit ut porta claudātur nē quis intret. 6. Celeriter fūgit nē umquam caperētur. 7. Forās ivit ut vidēret quō vēstigia dūcerent.

127 Mention the words *bovine*, *canine*, *equine*, *lupine*. Ask what they have in common and for an explanation of each word.

Ask the students to explain the italicized words in the following phrases: an *aversion* to cats, need for *custodial* care, an imposing *edifice*, *extra-sensory* perception (ESP), near the *natatorium*, the college *refectory*, the book of *statutes*, *vestiges* of prehistoric art.

Latin Noun	—	Meaning
<b>aditus</b>	—	an approach, access; entrance
<b>ascēsus</b>	—	a going up, ascent; place for going up
<b>cāsus</b>	—	a falling, fall; event, occurrence; accident; misfortune; destruction
<b>cursus</b>	—	a running; course
<b>exercitus</b>	—	training; a trained body, army
<b>iactus</b>	—	a throwing, cast
<b>ortus</b>	—	a rising ( of the heavenly bodies ); origin, source
<b>sēnsus</b>	—	sensation; feeling ( of emotion ); attitude; understanding; sense ( of words )
<b>sūmptus</b>	—	cost, expense

All of these nouns have a genitive ending in **-ūs** and are masculine.

## LESSON SEVENTEEN

### Excerpt

Some of Horace's *Epistles* in Book I are letters, such as might be written to a friend; others are discussions on philosophy or literature. The meter is dactylic hexameter.

The sixteenth epistle of Book I is addressed to a certain Quinctius. In the first part of the letter, Horace describes his Sabine farm. He then discusses the Stoic paradox that the man who has virtue has all he needs for a happy life. The quoted lines urge Quinctius not to value too highly the favor of the crowd.

See also Lesson Eight of the Teacher's Guide.

### 129 Tarquin the Proud, the Last King of the Romans

Tarquin the Proud was evil and cruel. The Romans feared the king; they were afraid for their wives and children. Just as he was a wicked king in peace, so he was a bad leader in warfare. When he had vainly attacked Gabii, a nearby city, by force, fearing that he would not be able to take it by arms, he tried to take the city by deceit and trickery.

And so he sent his son Sextus to Gabii. He (Sextus) deliberately told the people of Gabii that his father was very cruel (to him), that he had fled from Rome through spears and swords, (and) that there was no safety for him anywhere (*lit.* nothing anywhere was safe for him) except among the enemies of his father. The people of Gabii received him kindly. Soon he was brought into state meetings; finally he was chosen general for the war;

the father Tarquin was no more powerful at Rome than the son (was) at Gabii.

Sextus, now a man of great influence among the people of Gabii, sent a messenger to his father in Rome (*lit.* to Rome to his father) to find out what he wanted him to do. The king made no answer vocally but suddenly went out and crossed over into a garden with his son's messenger following. Walking along there silently, he struck off the tops of the heads of the poppies with a stick. Meanwhile the messenger, suspecting nothing, returned to Sextus in Gabii. He said, "The king made me no reply; (but) walking in the garden he cut off the heads of the tallest flowers. What does he mean (*lit.* wish)?"

Sextus realized that the king, a clever man, was warning him to destroy and kill the leading men of the state. Then many of the Gabinian leaders were driven out by Sextus, (and) many were killed, until the state of Gabii was handed over to the Roman king without a fight.

**References:** Botsford, *The Story of Rome as the Greeks and Romans Tell It*, pp. 55-57; Caldwell, p. 337; Frank, p. 23; Haaren and Poland, pp. 39-50; Mills, pp. 51-55; Myers, *Ancient History*, pp. 371, 375; Pelham, pp. 39-41; *Smaller Classical Dictionary*, p. 284; *The New Century Classical Handbook*, pp. 1053-1055.

131 Stress the fact that the complementary infinitive can be used only if the subject of the verb of fearing and the subject of the complementary action are the same.

Mention that a present subjunctive in Latin following a verb of fearing may express future time in English. **Timeō ut veniat.** *I am afraid that he will not come.*

The use of **nē** for an affirmative clause and **ut** for a negative may seem confusing. Explain that the clause following the verb of fearing originally was optative in nature.

(**Utinam**) **nē hoc fiat: vereor.** *May this not happen: I am afraid.*

In the subordinate form the negative **nē** acts as a conjunction, and no changes in the form of words is necessary. The sentence reads **Vereor nē hoc fiat.** *I am afraid (lest) this may happen.*

Similarly, **Ut (utinam) hoc fiat: vereor.** *Oh that this may happen: I am afraid (that it will not).* In the subordinate form this becomes **Vereor ut hoc fiat.** *I am afraid that this will not happen.*

Since the original thought is present after the verb of fearing, the original conjunctions are retained.

135 Some students may be familiar with the novel *Quo Vadis* by Henryk Sienkiewicz, which tells the story of the persecution of the Christians

during the time of Nero. The title may be explained by reference to the following legend:

According to the New Testament, the question "Quō vādis, Domine?" was addressed to Christ by one of His disciples on three different occasions. The best known of these questions is that posed by Simon Peter at the Cēna or Last Supper (John 13:36).

According to a legend told by St. Ambrose, Christ appeared to Peter as Peter was leaving Rome after the martyrdom of the Christians, which had followed the great fire of 64 A.D. Falling on his knees before the vision, Peter again asked, "Quō vādis, Domine?" Christ answered that He was returning to Rome to be crucified a second time because Peter had deserted his people. Peter then returned to Rome where he suffered crucifixion.

## 137

## EXERCISES

A. 1. They fear the army. They fear for the army. They are afraid to fight. They are afraid he is going *or* will go. 2. They are afraid of the boys. They fear for the boys. They are afraid to go out. They are afraid that we are going out. 3. He was afraid of the king. He feared for the king. He was afraid to speak. He was afraid that the king would speak. 4. They feared the citizens. They feared for the citizens. They were afraid to pretend *or* dissemble. They were afraid the citizens had pretended *or* dissembled. 5. They fear the state. They fear for the state. They are afraid to rule. They are afraid men have suffered.

NOTE: Mention the meanings *pretend* and *dissemble* for *dissimulō* in sentence 4. When this verb is intransitive, these meanings are more appropriate than the meanings *disguise* and *conceal* given in Lesson 12.

B. 1. I am afraid the girl is going. I am afraid the girl is not going. I am not afraid the girl is not going *or* will not go. 2. They were afraid they were withdrawing from the town. They were afraid they were not withdrawing from the town. They were not afraid they were not withdrawing *or* would not withdraw from the town. 3. We were not afraid we could not set out. We feared we could not set out. We feared he was not setting out *or* would not set out. 4. He fears they are not setting out. There is danger that they are setting out. He was not afraid that they were not setting out *or* would not set out. 5. He is afraid they have not gone. He fears that they have gone. He does not fear that they have not gone.

C. 1. nē ierint 2. nē nōn eant 3. ut *or* nē nōn quererētur 4. ut *or* nē nōn questus esset 5. nē oppidum caperētur 6. ut *or* nē oppidum nōn captum sit 7. nē fēminae dolērent 8. nē poena nūntiētur 9. ut urbs capī *or* nē urbs capī nōn posset 10. nē militēs auxilium nōn ferrent

D. 1. ab urbe; Rōmā; ab Rōmā 2. in oppidō; Athēnīs; domī 3. ad spēluncam; Carthāginem; domum 4. rūrī; Rōmae; in urbe 5. ab Athēnīs; Corinthō; domō



E. 1. unde; hinc 2. ubi; ibi 3. quō; hūc 4. quō; eō 5. ubi; hīc

F. 1. The staff-officer fears for the messengers sent in all directions by the leader. 2. We did not fear that they could not arm themselves. 3. They were afraid the soldiers would be able to go out from the fortifications. 4. There was danger that these ships could not sail across the sea. 5. Are you trying to free us from danger on the right wing? 6. Although I shall be safe, I am afraid that you will be in great danger at home.

G. 1. Imperātor incolās timuerat; timuerat nē exercitus ex omnibus partibus oppugnārētur. 2. Erat maximum periculum nē legiō circumvenīrētur. 3. Numquam verēbantur nē cōsulēs rem pūblicam bene gerere nōn possent. 4. Milītēs ex omnibus partibus prōgressī sunt: ā dextrō cornū erant legiōnēs; ā sinistrō cornū erant sociī. 5. Imperātor sciēbat quō milītēs sē abdidissent; sentiēbat eōs periculō liberātōs esse. 6. Equitēs, Rōmā maximā (cum) celeritāte secūtī, hostēs domum fugientēs adortī sunt. 7. Rōmam eāmus et ab Carthāgine longē maneāmus.

## LESSON EIGHTEEN

### Excerpt

Cicero's essay, *De Senectute*, is also called the *Cato Maior* from the principal speaker, the elder Cato, who carries on a discourse with two young friends on old age. Cato, eighty-three years old at the time, refutes the idea that old age is a burden and explains that it is, rather, a time of life providing the truest pleasures.

The lines quoted weigh the physical strength of Ajax, who is young, against the wisdom of Nestor, who is old.

See also Lesson Eleven of the Teacher's Guide.

### 139 Publius Decius Mus, as his Father Did, Sacrifices Himself for his Country

The Roman consuls were engaged at one and the same time in battle with these two nations, the Gauls and the Samnites; against the Samnites, Quintus Fabius; against the Gauls, Publius Decius. At first Fabius held his men back from fighting in (a regular) line of battle because he had no doubt that the spirits of the enemy would sink if the contest were drawn out (*lit.* from a longer contest). But Decius, more daring because of his youth and vigor, poured out whatever strength he had in the first engagement. Twice the Gallic cavalry was turned back. Soon, however, making an attack with chariots, the enemy put the Romans to flight. The sound of the horses and of the wheels terrified the horses of the Romans. Great terror took possession of (*lit.* was struck into) the Roman cavalry. Hence, even the legions were thrown into disorder.

In vain Decius tried to stop his men from turning in flight. Then, calling on the name of his father, Publius Decius, (*lit.* addressing his father by name), he said, "Why do I delay further? It has been granted to our family to sacrifice ourselves for the good of the state. Now I will give to the gods of the dead the soldiers of the enemy falling with me."

Having said this, he ordered the priest, Marcus Livius, whom he had kept from leaving him when he went down into the battle line, to say the same words with which his father Publius Decius had been consecrated in the Latin war. When these words were said, spurring his horse on into the Gallic line where it was the thickest, he was killed by the hostile spears.

From then on it was hardly a fight between human forces. The Romans, even though their leader was lost, a circumstance that at other times usually causes (*lit.* is accustomed to be for a) terror, were restrained from fleeing. The Gauls, on the other hand, either turned and fled, or driven mad, could neither fight nor flee.

## 142

## EXERCISES

A. 1. They hinder us from fighting. 2. They do not hinder us from being silent. 3. They restrained me from fighting. 4. They prevented me from fighting. 5. They did not prevent me from fighting. 6. I was hindered from fighting. 7. He was able to prevent the city from being taken by storm, wasn't he? 8. The soldiers objected to our taking the city by storm. 9. The consul does not stand in the way of the soldiers' setting out. 10. We could not be kept from sacrificing to the gods.

B. 1. I do not doubt that he has encouraged the soldiers. 2. I doubt whether he will encourage the soldiers. 3. The soldiers did not hesitate to set out from the city. 4. There was no doubt that the king was brave. 5. Who doubted that the town had been taken by storm? 6. They doubted whether the soldiers would take (intended to take) the town by storm. 7. The soldiers did not hesitate to storm the town. 8. There is no doubt that the birds are flying. 9. The king did not doubt that the soldiers were fighting bravely. 10. The consul did not hesitate to sacrifice himself for the public good.

C. 1. *nē or quōminus ex urbe excēderēmus* 2. *quōminus or quīn loquerēmur* 3. *loquī* 4. *quīn milītēs moenia custōdīrent* 5. *quīn milītēs moenia custōdiant* 6. *moenia custōdīre* 7. *moenia custōdīre* 8. *quōminus or quīn milītēs fugārent* 9. *quīn gentēs suōs sociōs cohortentur* 10. *quīn poena merērētur*

D. 1. Who can doubt that the soldiers of Decius, with their horses spurred on, are going to lose their lives? 2. The soldiers of Fabius were restrained from fighting in the battle line against the Samnites. 3. The sound of the

wheels of the chariots frightened the soldiers from fighting boldly. 4. Because of fear of punishment the matrons were prevented from entering the shop. 5. The common people are not being hindered from arousing the Roman citizens according to the agreement. 6. There was no doubt that the fiercest soldiers were accustomed to contend in battle. 7. Why does the shepherd hesitate to hide the sheep in the cave?

E. 1. Quis scit cūr milītēs inimīcī, duce captō, impeditī sint quōminus fugerent? 2. Nōn dubitō quīn mē domum revertī prohibēre possīs. 3. Turba mātṛōnārum irātārum ā pugnā ante tabernam retinēri nōn poterat. 4. Quis dubitāre poterat quīn Decius suōs milītēs retinēre cōnārētur quōminus terga verterent? 5. Nōn recusābit quōminus *or* quīn cīvēs certiorēs dē proeliō faciat. 6. Pāstor nōn retentus est quōminus *or* quīn bovēs in spēluncam caudīs traheret. 7. Cōsul nōn dubitābat quīn hostēs prohibēri possent proelium ā tergō committere. 8. Psȳchē, marītō suō āmissō, in agrīs vagārī *or* errāre nōn dubitābat.

## 144

## WORD STUDY

English Word — Meaning

alien	—	belonging to another; strange; <i>especially</i> , not belonging to the same country
alienation	—	estrangement; <i>specifically</i> , mental derangement ( <i>cf. Latin aliēnātus ā sē</i> )
alias	—	<i>adverb</i> , otherwise, otherwise called <i>noun</i> , another name, an assumed name
alibi	—	<i>noun</i> , the plea of having been elsewhere at the alleged time of the commission of an act; ( <i>colloquial</i> ) any excuse

## LESSON NINETEEN

### Excerpt

Many of the circle of young Romans to which Catullus belonged possessed a great interest in the writings of the Alexandrian poets and took delight in composing occasional verse on Greek models and in Greek meters. The poem from which these lines are taken refers to an evening Catullus has spent with his closest friend, C. Licinius Calvus. The two young men have tried their hand at light verse in various meters; and, in extravagant terms, Catullus expresses his longing for another meeting. The meter is hendecasyllabic.

See also Lessons Four, Six and Nine of the Teacher's Guide.

While Caesar was waging war in Gaul, it happened that in the East the Roman people were suffering a serious blow from the Parthians. For so great was the greed of the consul Crassus for Parthian gold that he led his army into the territory of the Parthians. He did not doubt that he would be able to bring back from there a great amount of booty to Rome.

When he had pitched camp near Nicephorium, envoys sent from King Orodes begged him to remember their former treaty. On hearing these (envoys), Crassus said that he would reply at Seleucia. And so the gods, avengers of treaties, helped the Parthians, whom Crassus had deceived for the sake of gold.

It happened that a pretended deserter disclosed to Crassus an unknown route. Because Crassus trusted the treacherous deserter, he turned his route away from the Euphrates, which protected his rear, and, with the same man as guide, led his army into the middle of a plain so that it was exposed to the enemy on all sides. And so he had scarcely reached Carrhae when the king's soldiers showed their standards on all sides. Then without delay, the Parthian cavalry threw spears as thick as hail so that the Roman army was destroyed. It could not even seek safety in flight.

Crassus himself was killed; his son perished almost in view of his father. The head of Crassus, along with his right hand, was brought back to the king. Liquid gold was poured into the mouth so that Crassus, who had been so greedy for gold when alive, finally had enough (gold) when he was dead.

NOTE: The *Epitome de Gestis Romanorum* of L. Annaeus Florus from which this story is adapted is an historical work based on the writings of Livy and earlier historians. The style is elegant, often affected: facts of chronology and of geography are often in error.

Florus was either a Gaul or a Spaniard who wrote in the reign of Trajan and who was still alive at the time of Hadrian.

References: *Harper's Dictionary of Classical Literature and Antiquities*, p. 424; Myers, *Ancient History*, p. 471; Oman, pp. 162-203; *Smaller Classical Dictionary*, p. 95; *The New Century Classical Handbook*, pp. 328-330. See Plutarch's *Life of Crassus* for a detailed account of the battle.

146 Place the expressions **Fiat lūx** and **fiat iūstitia** on the board. The sentences will review the jussive subjunctive and illustrate the use of the verb **fiō**.

## 150

## EXERCISES

A. 1. Certiōrēs ab nōbīs fiant. 2. Iniūria ab eō fiēbat. 3. Pāx ab eīs facta est. 4. Testāmenta ab eīs fient. 5. Foedera ab eīs fiunt. 6. Fīnis ā nōbīs fiat. 7. Moenia ab vōbīs facta erant. 8. Fraus ab tē facta est. 9. Iter ab exercitū fit. 10. (Tū) coniūnx mea facta es.

B. 1. He warned the soldiers to withdraw. He sent soldiers to fight. He warned the soldiers so strongly that they withdrew. 2. He is urging the citizens to guard the camp well. They are sending citizens to guard the camp well. He encourages the citizens in such a way that they guard the camp well. 3. He sought help from the allies with such care that they sent food. He asked the allies to send food. We sent allies to ask for food. 4. The soldiers are advancing to take possession of the camp of the enemy. The soldiers advance so quickly that they get possession of the camp of the enemy. They are persuading the soldiers to take possession of the camp of the enemy. 5. He asked the women to be silent. He trained the women so well that they were silent. He trained the women so that they might be silent.

C. 1. He sent allies so fast that the enemy could not flee. He sent allies in order that the enemy might not be able to flee. 2. Psyche makes demands from her husband with such grief that he never leaves her. Psyche demands that he never leave her. 3. He urged the soldiers not to run from the enemy. He encouraged the soldiers in such a way that they did not run from the enemy. 4. The Parthian cavalry are breaking through the line of march so quickly that they are leaving our men no hope of safety. The Parthian cavalry are breaking through the line of march in order to leave our men no hope of safety.

D. 1. *nē*; ut *nōn* 2. *nē* . . . *umquam*; ut . . . *numquam* 3. *nē* *quis*; ut *nēmō* 4. ut *nihil*; *nē* *quid*

E. 1. So great is Crassus' greed for gold that he dares to engage in battle with the Parthian forces. 2. There was such great fear that they never dared return. 3. They made an attack so fiercely that they opened a path for the allies. 4. They made the walls so strong that no attack was made. 5. The following day the enemy attacked our camp so suddenly that no one could prevent them from filling the ditch. 6. It happened that our men in the middle of the plain were exposed to the enemy on all sides. 7. It happened as a result of these things that Crassus could not gain a victory. 8. There was no doubt that Crassus, who was eager for gold, trusted the treacherous deserter.

NOTE: Encourage the students to use natural English idiom in translating, as in sentences 6 and 7 of Exercise E.

F. 1. *Militēs timēbant or verēbantur nē opus esset tam difficile ut nēmō id cōficere posset.* 2. *Dux nōs totiēns fefellit ut nēmō eī crēderet.* 3. *Multīs rēbus (Multīs dē causīs) accidit or fit ut obsidiō relinquātur.* 4. *Tam audācter adoriēbāmur or aggrediēbāmur ut hostēs dubitārent num salūtem fugā petere posset.* 5. *Tam celeriter profecti sunt ut nihil eōs impedire posset.* 6. *Equitēs Parthici primum agmen tam audācter adorti or aggressi sunt ut exercitus Rōmānus pedem referre cōgerētur.*



151 Ask the students to explain the italicized words in the following phrases, words related by derivation to the Latin vocabulary: the light *aperture* in the camera, *cupidity* for power, an *effusion* of lava, *fallacious* reasoning, a papal *fiat*, the *perfidy* of the leaders, a *profusion* of color, a *simulated* desert scene.

## LESSON TWENTY

### Excerpt

These lines are contained in a lengthy plea of fifty-six lines to a girl to leave her hair as nature intended it to be. Even now that she is almost bald and needs a wig, it is not too late to repair the damage.

See also Lesson Twelve of the Teacher's Guide.

### 153

### The Conspirators

When the kings had been driven out, the senate approved a decree by which all the Tarquin family would be exiles. But, through trickery, freedom was almost lost. There were at Rome many young men who wanted to indulge their desires. Since pleasure had been much more unrestrained in the kingdom, these young men complained to one another that liberty had been lost. They said, "The king was the kind of man who could make a distinction between a friend and an enemy."

So they were already in a disloyal frame of mind on their own account when envoys arrived from the kings, without mention of the kings' return, seeking only (to get) the royal possessions back. For several days the matter was discussed in the senate. Meantime the envoys, although openly seeking the property, were secretly making plans by which the kingdom might be restored. Going about through the city, they test the temper of the young nobles. To those who receive their conversation favorably (*lit.* by whom their conversation is favorably received) they give letters from the Tarquins. They confer with them that the kings may secretly be received into the city at night. They take some of the young nobles into partnership in their plan.

Meantime, since it had been decreed in the senate that the property should be restored, the envoys had this reason for delay in the city. They prevailed upon the conspirators to give them letters for the Tarquins. The letters, given to be a guarantee of loyalty, made the crime clear. For before their departure to the Tarquins, when the companions in crime were dining at the house of one of the conspirators and were discussing the new plot, a slave overheard their conversation. Before this he had already realized what was going on but was waiting for that occasion when the letters would be given to the envoys. When the letters were given, he reported the matter to the consuls. They immediately arrested the envoys and the conspirators.

When the conspirators had been thrown into jail, the whole plot was suppressed without disturbance. Although the envoys were (in the position of) enemies, nevertheless international law prevailed. But the matter of the kings' property was once more referred to the senators. Overcome by anger, they forbade the property to be restored. The land of the Tarquins, which was between the city and the Tiber, was consecrated to Mars and afterward became the Campus Martius.

158

EXERCISES

A. 1. When you speak, I listen. 2. When you speak, I shall listen. 3. When they were struggling in battle, the leader was killed. 4. Since the plan had been approved, all were joyful. 5. Since the gates had been closed, the army could not enter. 6. Although the conspirators could not deceive the citizens, nevertheless they did not stop hoping. 7. Since the opportunity has been lost, we shall return home. 8. I was walking through the streets when I met my friend. 9. Whenever a just king was reigning, no one was afraid. 10. When the matter was being discussed in the senate, the envoys approached the conspirators.

B. 1. *cum pugnāret* 2. *cum hoc proelium factum esset* 3. *cum militēs cohortātus esset* 4. *cum societātem sceleris vereantur or timeant* 5. *cum magnus exercitus coāctus esset or magnum exercitum coēgissent* 6. *cum cōsiliū coniūrātōrum timērent or verērentur* 7. *cum ex urbe profecti essent* 8. *cum equitēs flūmen trānsirent* 9. *cum fūmus vīsus esset or fūmum vīdissent* 10. *cum hae rēs gestae essent*

NOTES: Stress the fact that subordinate ideas can often be expressed by an ablative absolute or by a **cum** clause.

C. 1. They despise the citizen who is making an alliance of crime. They despise a citizen who makes an alliance of crime. 2. This is the city which is ruling the world. This is a city (the kind) which rules the world. 3. We were afraid of the men who were killing the children. We were afraid of men who killed children. 4. They saw the envoy, whom they were able to trust. They saw an envoy whom they could trust. 5. Punish the boys who are cheating. Punish boys who cheat.

D. 1. Since he is wise, we trust him. 2. Although he was very wise, we did not trust him. 3. When they had made an end of fighting, they retreated. 4. We are always very friendly to the leader since he has given us many gifts. 5. When we had come to the mouth of the Rhone, we found twenty-three boats. 6. When he had reached Babylon, Alexander died. 7. Although he has large forces, yet he fears that an attack may (will) be made by the enemy. 8. When he had made a four-day march through their territory, he learned from captives that the Rhine River was a mile from his camp.

E. 1. Cum haec rēs gesta esset *or* hoc factum esset, exiit *or* profectus est.  
2. Cum esset dominus dūrus, servī eum ōderant. 3. Cum oppidō potītus sit,  
omnibus incolīs pepercit *or* parsit. 4. Militēs mīsit quī omnia bona *or* omnēs  
rēs incolārum raperent. 5. Erat tālis ut nēmō eī crēdere *or* cōfīdere posset.  
6. Cum amīcus eius fuerīs, ea quae *or* id quod loqueris nōn neglegam.  
7. Cum timērent *or* verērentur nē quis suās bovēs raperet, in agrīs multōs  
ferocēs canēs habēbant. 8. Accidit *or* fit ut memorēs rērum gestārum  
Alexandrī sint.

## LESSON TWENTY-ONE

### Excerpt

The quoted lines are from the proem to the *Aeneid*. See also Lesson Two of the Teacher's Guide.

### 160

#### A Defeat of the Roman Cavalry

Our forces, who numbered 5,000, had no fear, because the German envoys had left Caesar a little while before and that day had been requested by them for a truce.

Meantime Caesar sent to the (cavalry) officers, who had gone on ahead with all the cavalry, messengers who were to warn them not to attack the enemy in battle and to hold out until he himself should draw nearer with the army, if they themselves should be attacked. But, although the enemy had no more than 800 cavalry, because those who had gone across the Meuse to get provisions had not yet returned, making an attack as soon as they caught sight of our cavalry, they quickly disrupted our men; and when we (*lit.* our men) in turn resisted them, they jumped down on foot, as is their custom, stabbed our horses, unhorsed several of our men and put the rest to flight. Terrified, they (our men) did not stop fleeing until they came in sight of our column.

In this battle seventy-four of our cavalry were killed, among them Piso, a man of great daring. While he was bringing aid to his brother, who was surrounded by the enemy, he rescued him (the brother) from danger and (then), thrown from his injured horse, he himself resisted most bravely as long as he could. After Piso, surrounded and having suffered many wounds, fell, his brother, who had by now withdrawn from the battle, noticed this from a distance and, spurring on his horse, he rode into the enemy (*lit.* offered himself to the enemy) and was killed.

After this battle, Caesar judged that it was the height of madness to wait for the enemy's forces to increase and their cavalry to return. And thus,

when the Germans on the next day, employing the same trick, came to him in his camp in large numbers, they said that they wanted to apologize to him. Happy that they were made available to him, Caesar ordered them held. He himself led out all his troops and ordered the cavalry to follow the column.

References: Caesar, *Bellicum Gallicum*, IV, 12.

## 165

## EXERCISES

A. 1. While he was watching, the Romans attacked. As long as the Romans were attacking, the enemy kept on resisting. They were waiting for them to attack. 2. While they were besieging the town, the women complained. While they besieged the town, the women complained. The soldiers delayed until they could fight. 3. While they were dining, the deserter left the camp. The slave was there while they were dining. The slave waited until they were eating. 4. While they were guarding the deserter, the soldiers heard shouting. While they were guarding the deserter, the soldiers talked among themselves. The soldiers were waiting for the deserter to escape. 5. The soldiers entered before the gates of the town were closed. The soldiers entered before the gates of the town could be closed. 6. Before the plan was disclosed to the soldiers, the leader encouraged them. Before the plan should be disclosed to the soldiers, the leader encouraged them. 7. They did not advance into the enemy territory until the messenger arrived. They did not advance into the enemy territory until the messenger should arrive. 8. As soon as the messenger had come, they advanced into the enemy territory. As soon as the messenger comes, they will advance into enemy territory. 9. As soon as the plan has been shown, the soldiers will set out. As soon as the plan had been shown, the soldiers set out. 10. As soon as the legion overpowers the camp of the enemy, it will return home. The legion returned home as soon as it had overpowered the camp of the enemy.

B. 1. obsidētur; obsidēbātur; caperētur 2. īnstruitur; īnstruēbātur; īnstruerētur 3. (com)parātur; (com)parābātur; (com)parārētur 4. morantur; morābantur; pervenīret 5. pervēnit; pervenīret 6. possent; potuērunt 7. imperāvit; imperāret 8. vēnit; vēnerit 9. cohortātus erit; cohortātus est

C. 1. magnā diligentiā; trium pedum 2. quattuor milium passuum; trium milium passuum 3. ingentī magnitūdine; multōrum milium passuum 4. magnā pulchritūdine; parvō pretiō 5. magnā virtūte; quattuor hōrārum

D. 1. The memory of Caesar will live as long as Rome remains (as long as there will be a Rome). 2. Piso, provided he is able, will resist very bravely. 3. The instigators of the war were men of the greatest boldness, desirous of a revolution. 4. War broke out before the Romans had a chance to return across the Meuse. 5. While Caesar was delaying a few days near this town, merchants informed the Romans that the Germans were men of enormous size of body. 6. The finest men will not stop until they have driven all these evil men from the city. 7. They reported that all the Germans, informed of the arrival of a Roman army, had retreated to the outermost boundaries with all their forces. 8. The consuls, influenced by these matters, retreated after deciding not to fight.

E. 1. Dum ad flūmen redeunt, equitēs nostrōs cōspēxērunt. 2. Māter eōrum (eārum) gaudēbit dummodo satisfaciant. 3. Pīsō, vir magnā virtūte, Rōmānīs praeerat. 4. Dum vivēmus, lēgibus auctōris huius urbis pārēbimus. 5. Expectāmus dum ab nūntiīs magnitudinem calamitātis *or* clādis cognōscāmus. 6. Pīsō vulnerātus est antequam frāter eum ex periculō ēriperet. 7. Equitēs, simul atque *or* cum primum ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, hostēs adortī *or* aggressī eōs in fugam dedērunt. 8. Cum primum *or* Simul atque ad flūmen pervēnerint, pontem longum trecentōs pedēs *or* pontem trecentōrum pedum aedificābunt.

Latin Verb — Meaning

cōnstō	— stand together; correspond; consist; be fixed; be evident
cōsistō	— stand (completely); take a stand; halt; agree with
cōstituō	— make to stand (completely); station; set up; establish; decide
īnstō	— stand on; be close to; pursue; approach; persist, insist
īnsistō	— stand on; set foot on; stand still on; halt
īnstituō	— put in place; draw up; establish; instruct
restō	— stand against; oppose; stand still; remain; <i>impersonal</i> , it remains
resistō	— stand again; stay; halt; oppose, withstand
restituō	— make stand again; replace; repair
dēsistō	— stand away; withdraw; leave off
dēstituō	— set down; place apart; forsake
praestō	— stand before; be outstanding; <i>impersonal</i> , it is better
praestituō	— appoint beforehand; prescribe



## LESSON TWENTY-TWO

### Excerpt

See Lesson Three of the Teacher's Guide.

168

### Daydreams

**Secunda.** What are you thinking of?

**Marcus.** Nothing. Go away. Don't you see that I want to be alone?

**Secunda.** But, Marcus, if you only knew what I heard . . .

**Marcus.** Well then, what did you hear?

**Secunda.** You would rather know than see me go away. (*She goes out.*)

**Marcus.** Come back, Secunda! Come back! I want to know what you heard.

**Secunda.** I am coming back. But if I should tell you, perhaps you wouldn't keep quiet and there will be trouble for me, for our parents will find out that I know, unless you keep quiet, and they will be angry.

**Marcus.** Now you are talking nonsense, Secunda. If you were a boy, you would know very well that boys can keep quiet. Tell me (*lit.* Speak).

**Secunda.** I'll tell you; but you, you keep quiet. Will you keep quiet if I tell you?

**Marcus.** Of course I'll keep quiet. Just tell.

**Secunda.** I heard Father telling Mother that Publius would return from Asia early in the spring. Already he is traveling toward the harbor and he will set sail soon.

**Marcus.** It would be nice (*lit.* well) if he should come back. But why don't our parents themselves talk about Publius' return when we're all present?

**Secunda.** Father told Mother to keep (it) quiet. He isn't sure himself.

**Marcus.** Let's keep quiet, if Father doesn't want the children to know . . . Ah! If Publius should come back rich, we would all be poor no longer, and we would be able to do everything (that) we want. For I was thinking. . .

**Secunda.** What were you thinking? Now I know why you want to be alone.

**Marcus.** If we hadn't been poor, I would be a military tribune (now), and would be with Caesar in Gaul.

**Secunda.** You could have been a soldier and could have killed many barbarians. If you had been a legionary soldier, you would be a centurion now. If you were a centurion the Roman army would never suffer either misfortune or disaster. You would be far ahead of the other centurions in courage.

**Marcus.** I don't want to be a centurion. If I were a military tribune I would be living with Caesar.

Secunda. You aren't a tribune, you are a shop-keeper. But if Publius comes back rich, as he always writes that he will, I shall have many slaves and dresses trimmed with gold and everything (that) I want. But be quiet, here comes Father with Mother.

169 Latin, with the future or future perfect tense to express time in future conditions, is more accurate than English, which uses the present tense. By the use of examples, call attention to this fact.

**Liberi gaudēbunt, sī Pūblius erit dives.**

The children will rejoice if Publius is rich.

**Sī vēnerit, eum vidēbimus.**

If he comes, we shall see him.

## 170

## EXERCISES

A. 1. If the lieutenant is leading the soldiers, they are winning. 2. If the lieutenant was leading the soldiers, they were winning. 3. If the lieutenant leads the soldiers, they will win. 4. If the lieutenant should lead the soldiers, they would win. 5. If the lieutenant were leading the soldiers, they would be winning. 6. If the lieutenant had led the soldiers, they would have won. 7. If I have money, I shall give it to you gladly. 8. If I should have money, I should give it to you. 9. If I had money, I should be giving it to you. 10. If I had money, I gave it to you. 11. If I had had money, I should have given it to you. 12. Unless the leader were drawing up the army, the enemy would be attacking. 13. Unless the leader had drawn up the army, the enemy would have attacked. 14. Unless the leader should draw up the army, the enemy would attack. 15. If the women have gone into the shops, they are buying many things. 16. If the women go into the shops, they will buy many things. 17. If the women had gone into the shops, they would have bought many things. 18. If the women had gone into the shops, they would be buying many things.

B. 1. sit; nōn pāreant 2. erit; nōn pārebunt 3. fuisset; nōn pāruissent 4. erat; nōn pārebant 5. oppugnāvērunt; vincunt 6. oppugnent; vincant 7. oppugnāvissent; vīcissent 8. oppugnāverint; vincent 9. oppugnābant; vincēbant 10. acciperētur; solverent 11. accipiātur; solvant 12. accepta esset; solvissent 13. frāctae sunt; nōn possumus 14. frāctae essent; nōn potuimus 15. frāctae erunt; nōn poterimus 16. frangantur; nōn possimus 17. frangēbantur; nōn poterāmus 18. victi sunt; missi sunt 19. victi essent; missi essent 20. victi erunt; mittentur

C. 1. If I had suffered defeat, I should have returned more quickly. 2. If I suffer defeat, I shall return. 3. If I had suffered a loss, I should have returned with very great difficulty. 4. Unless you do these things, you will be killed. 5. Booty will be ours if we drive the Romans from camp. 6. If the

centurion was here, he was with the soldiers. 7. Since a loss has been suffered, we shall no longer be able to withstand the force of the enemy unless help is brought to us during the night. 8. If several of the cavalry(men) should fall, the rest would return to camp as quickly as possible. 9. If the scouts who ascended the hill had been captured, we should all be in great danger now. 10. If Rome is in danger, many, forgetting themselves, will die for the native land.

D. 1. Si legiō trānsierit, hostēs pedem referent. 2. Si aderit, militēs dūcet. 3. Si Pūblius ante hiemem redierit, Mārcus erit laetus. 4. Si tē videat, tē dīvitem iūdicet. 5. Pūblius, si dīves sit, suīs parentibus multa dōna ferat. 6. Pūblius, si dīves fuisset, sēcum multa *or* multās rēs tulisset. 7. Si eī tum pāruiſsē-s (-tis), multōs amīcōs nunc habērē-s (-tis) *or* tibi (vōbīs) multī amīci nunc essent. 8. Nisi esset pauper, is quoque Rōmā iisset *or* iisset ut magnum templum vidēret. 9. Si nostrī sociī nōbīs auxiliō veniant, ante hiemem oppidum capere possīmus. 10. Nisi fallor, multī in proeliō cecidērunt.

NOTE: In sentence 14 of Exercise B, the following rule applies: If the verb of the apodosis of an untrue condition is **possum, debeō, oportet**, or a passive periphrastic (expressions meaning *can, may, might, ought, must*), it should be put in the imperfect indicative to denote present time and in the perfect indicative to denote past time.

**Si statim profecti essēmus, effugere potuimus.**

If we had set out at once, we could have escaped.

Woodcock, *A New Latin Grammar*, Section 200

## LESSON TWENTY-THREE

### Excerpt

Propertius (B.C. c. 50-c. 16) and his contemporaries, Tibullus and Ovid, form the triad of the so-called *Elegiac Poets*. Like Vergil and Horace, Propertius found a patron in Maecenas, Augustus' chief advisor.

Propertius' elegies are grouped into four books. Most of these poems (practically all of the first two books) are love elegies centering around "Cynthia," the poet's mistress, with whom he had a passionate and often unhappy relationship reminiscent of the love affair between Catullus and his "Lesbia."

The elegy from which these lines are quoted begins with a description of a painting of Cupid. It goes on to describe the effect of Cupid's darts on the poet and the suffering that has made him a shadow of himself. The poem ends with a warning that, once the poet is destroyed, there will be no one who will give glory to Cupid by singing the beauties of Cynthia.

Compare also the excerpt from Propertius in Lesson Twenty-Six of Book I.

(*Accius is talking with his wife Cluentia.*)

**Accius.** Don't let anyone hear us, Cluentia! I have here in my hand a letter from Publius that he had given to a friend. However, I didn't want to read the letter aloud to the children, without consulting you. For you well know how eagerly they are waiting for Publius' return. Each one of them hopes that his brother will return a second Crassus, rich and powerful, a man of the highest rank.

**Cluentia.** What are you saying, Accius? Isn't our son rich?

**Accius.** Each of us has been mistaken, Cluentia. Let's not blame Publius, for he never deceived us nor said that he would bring back jars full of gold. He always wrote that he was well and that things were going well and he sent (us) beautiful presents. And now, when he has decided to return home, he writes that we should not expect too much. However, he says that no one is happier than he, for he will soon return to his family. Therefore, let us warn the children. Let Publius not find the children sad, especially since he has been so good and generous! Let us not be unhappy (*lit.* Let joy not be lacking for us).

(*Secunda enters quickly.*)

**Secunda.** Mother, Mother, there is someone coming down (*lit.* on) the street with two slaves who are carrying big bundles (*lit.* large loads).

**Cluentia.** Who is it, Secunda?

**Secunda.** Oh, Mother, he looks (*lit.* is) like our brother Publius; I should have said he looks like Father, but younger. Why don't you hurry, Mother and Father?

(*Publius enters with Aulus and Tertia. The slaves put down the bundles.*)

**Publius.** Greetings, Mother and Father. I am back safe. I arrived quicker than I (had) expected. Don't cry, Mother dear; I am well.

**Cluentia.** I am the most fortunate of all women. My son has returned.

(*The mother puts her arms around her son's neck and kisses him.*)

**Publius.** How happy we shall all be. (My) sisters, your brother is not rich, but neither is he poor. (*The girls run to Publius.*)

**Secunda.** You are rich enough, Publius. We don't love your riches; we love you. Don't (ever) go away from home again.

**All.** You speak (well) for us (too), Secunda.

NOTE: Since there was no postal service in Rome, a person wanting to send a letter would give it to some traveler who would deliver it on arriving at his destination.

174 Mention *alterius* as another genitive singular form of *alter*. The ending *-ius* with short *i* was often found in verse, although the *i* was originally long.

Tell the students that the indefinite *quis* and *quid* replace *aliquis* and *aliquid* after *sī*, *nisi*, *nē*, and *num*.

A. 1. We have another omen. 2. He cannot bear the weight of the other jar. 3. Some will flee in one direction, others in another. 4. The other ally will not help. 5. The father gives money to one son; he gives nothing to the other. 6. The one cave is large; the other, small. 7. The rest of the staff-officers were angry. 8. Someone will lead these soldiers. 9. I heard something concerning this staff-officer. 10. He punished some slaves. 11. From some citizens he demanded something. 12. No one has come from the port. 13. He could not see anything in the cave. 14. A certain one of the conspirators told me something. 15. They attacked each city (both cities) by force of arms. 16. He orders each soldier to fight bravely. 17. They saw no one on the wall of the town. 18. Since no one prevented us, we kissed the girl (gave the girl kisses). 19. There was no treachery in the plan. 20. We blamed neither lieutenant.

B. 1. ceteri or reliqui 2. reliquis 3. quaque 4. neutro 5. neuter or neutri 6. nullam 7. nullae 8. ne quis 9. quidam 10. ut nemo 11. quemquam 12. quisquam 13. aliquis 14. aliquid 15. nonnullae 16. utrumque 17. cuiusque 18. quoque 19. nec quemquam or neminem 20. nec quidquam or nihil 21. nihil 22. neutri or neutrum 23. nemini 24. quendam

C. 1. The rest of the family awaits Publius. 2. Someone will show Publius the way. 3. Some of the women are very happy. 4. I say that no one is happier than Publius. 5. Be quiet lest someone see you. 6. A certain boy is joyfully awaiting my arrival. 7. Each brother is kind and generous. 8. If anyone had done this, he would have paid the penalty. 9. Each of them hopes the brother will return (as) a wealthy man. 10. The one sister is like the mother; the other, like the father.

D. 1. Nullum alium ducem secuturi sumus. 2. Alii meam pecuniam amant; alii me ipsum amant. 3. Nullam facultatem iustae pacis habemus or Nulla facultas iustae pacis nobis est. 4. Cum quibusdam ex suis amicis redit. 5. Negavit quemquam dona misisse. 6. Hieme uterque or quisque imperator quam plurimas navis aedificabit. 7. Nisi quem miserimus, Publius non cognoscet nos adesse. 8. Nec quisquam ante hoc tempus transierat montes qui sunt inter Galliam et Italiam. 9. Dolore prohibeor dicere cuique ex vobis quae res factae sint. 10. Accidit ut nemo equites hostium vicerit.

176 Ask the students to explain the phrase *alter ego* as applied to a trusted friend.

Ask the students to explain the italicized words in the following phrases, words related by derivation to the vocabulary of this lesson and to the indefinite pronouns and adjectives: to *adhere* to a principle, to *annihilate* the entire village, proof of *culpability*, *incoherent* remarks, a state of *neutrality*, the *Nullification* Acts, an *onerous* task.



## LESSON TWENTY-FOUR

### Excerpt

Not much is known of the life of Aulus Gellius, except that he lived in the second century A.D., that he was at one time a judge, that he spent some time in Athens and that he had several children. At Athens, he began the series of notes on all sorts of subjects and the anecdotes that make up the *Noctes Atticae*.

177

### A Wicked Praetor

You have heard the envoys of Tyndaris say that a statue of Mercury, which was honored among them with the greatest reverence, was carried off with criminal violence at the order of Verres. As soon as he came into the town, he ordered them to tear down the statue and take it to Messana. This (order) seemed disgraceful to those who were present, unbelievable to those who (merely) heard about it. Verres, a very shrewd man, did not persist but, on his departure, he ordered Sopater, a leading citizen (of the town), to tear it down.

Now a little later, the praetor (Verres) came to Tyndaris; he asked about the statue. Sopater told him that the senate would not allow it (to be removed) and that by common consent (concerted action) the death penalty had been decided upon if anyone touched it without permission of the senate. Then Verres said, "What punishment are you talking about (*lit.* telling me)? I shall not leave you alive. I say to you that you will be beaten to death unless the statue is handed over to me. Only in this way will you avert peril to yourself (*lit.* your own peril)."

When the matter was reported to the senate, the senators made (gave) Sopater no reply, but, upset and disturbed, they withdrew. He (Sopater) explained the situation to the praetor and said that he could not give him the statue that he was asking for.

It was the height of winter, very cold weather (and) a lot of rain, when Verres ordered his lictors to throw Sopater headlong into the forum from the colonnade where he himself (Verres) was sitting. Without delay he (Sopater) was stripped and surrounded by the lictors.

In the middle of the forum there are equestrian statues of the Marcelli, as (there are) in almost all the other towns of Sicily; of these the praetor chose the statue of Gaius Marcellus. He ordered Sopater, a noble (man), tied to it. What torture he suffered, bound nude on the bronze statue, in the rain and the cold! The crowd, moved with pity, shouting loudly begged the senate to promise Verres the (*lit.* that) statue of Mercury. Then the senate (senators) went to the praetor and promised (the statue of) Mercury. And so Sopater, barely alive, was taken down from the statue.

NOTE: It was normal Roman procedure for a praetor, in the year following his praetorship, to be sent as governor to the province of which he had been praetor.

References: Cicero's *Verrine Orations* (The Second Speech against Verres); *Harper's Dictionary of Classical Literature and Antiquities*, p. 1649; Myers, *Ancient History*, pp. 462-463; *Smaller Classical Dictionary*, p. 310; *The New Century Classical Handbook*, p. 1138.

178 The teacher will find Allen and Greenough, Sec. 482-485, valuable in clarifying the rules governing the sequence of tenses in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse.

## 180

## EXERCISES

A. 1. This is the statue which Verres is removing. I say that this is the statue which Verres is removing. I said that this was the statue which Verres was removing. 2. This is the city in which they live. I know this is the city in which they live. I knew this was the city in which they lived. 3. This is the town that was captured. He says this is the town that was captured. He said this was the town that had been captured. 4. This is the town that the soldiers will take. He says this is the town that the soldiers will take. He said this was the town that the soldiers would take. 5. He is the envoy who announced the victory. I know that he is the envoy who announced the victory. I knew that he was the envoy who had announced the victory. 6. Where is the cave into which the cattle are being dragged? I am asking where the cave is into which the cattle are being dragged. I asked where the cave was into which the cattle were being dragged. 7. Who is the general who besieged the city? He knows who the general is who besieged the city. He knew who the general was who had besieged the city. 8. Why will the soldiers whom he encourages flee from battle? I wonder why the soldiers whom he encourages will flee from battle. I wondered why the soldiers whom he encouraged would flee from battle.

B. 1. intrā-s (-tis); intrē-s (-tis); intrārē-s (-tis) 2. vidē-s (-tis); videā-s (-tis); vidērē-s (-tis) 3. sunt; sint; essent 4. invēnit; invēnerit; invēnisset 5. vincuntur; vincantur; vincerentur 6. crēdat; crēdat; crēderet 7. profecti erunt; profecti sint; profecti essent 8. vultis; velint; vellent 9. captum sit; captum sit; captum esset 10. potestis; possitis; possētis

C. 1. videās esse; vidērēs esse 2. culpāverit . . . fuisse; culpāvisset . . . fuisse 3. pervēnerit . . . nūtiātūrum esse; pervēnisset . . . nūtiātūrum esse 4. lēctūrus sit . . . mitti; lēctūrus esset . . . mitti 5. mereātur sit; merērētur esset 6. timuerint . . . oppressa sit; timuissent . . . oppressa esset 7. satisfactūrī sint . . . neglegātur; satisfactūrī essent . . . neglegerētur 8. aggredi-antur . . . sit; aggrederentur . . . esset

D. 1. They fought with honor; they fought with great honor. 2. According to custom, they will return to camp; as is their custom, they will return to camp. 3. They worked with great diligence; they worked with great diligence. 4. He spoke of his own accord; he spoke with great sympathy. 5. They were fighting with great danger; they were fighting with great courage.

E. 1. We are trying to save the statue which Verres wishes to remove. 2. The envoy says that they are trying to save the statue which Verres wishes to remove. 3. The envoys said that the citizens were trying to save the statue which Verres wished to remove. 4. As soon as he came into the town, he demanded the statue from the citizens. 5. You heard that Verres had demanded the statue from the citizens as soon as he came into town. 6. You had heard that the praetor had demanded the statue from the citizens as soon as he had come into town. 7. Do not beg the senate to promise that statue to Verres.

F. 1. Si Verrēs statuam tetigerit, cīvēs erunt irātī. 2. Ostendit cīvēs futūrōs esse irātōs si Verrēs statuam tetigerit. 3. Ostendit cīvēs futūrōs esse irātōs si Verrēs statuam tetigisset. 4. Hoc est oppidum ad quod Verrēs vēnit. 5. Cognōscit hoc esse oppidum ad quod Verrēs vēnerit. 6. Cognōvit hoc esse oppidum ad quod Verrēs vēnisset. 7. Rē ad senātum dēlātā, senātōrēs negāvērunt sē passūrōs esse Verrem habēre statuam quam imperāvisset.

## LESSON TWENTY-FIVE

### Excerpt

It is interesting to note that a literate person of the sixteenth century was able to compose Latin poetry as easily as English.

The meter of this poem, like that of the hymns of the medieval church, is accentual, as is English poetry. This is to be contrasted with the meter of classical Latin poetry which, like the Greek on which it was patterned, depends on quantity.

### 182

### The Young Scipio

When the citizens wanted to hand the command of Spain over to a suitable man and no one was willing to take it, Scipio, a young noble of twenty-three (years), said that he was ready to set out for Spain. Sent with an army to fight, he stormed New Carthage. By fighting bravely, he conquered a large part of Spain. But he was not only skilled in fighting, he was also an example to others of clemency and generosity.

For once, while he was engaged in advancing into enemy territory, a very beautiful girl was brought to him as a captive by the soldiers. When Scipio,

a man of great foresight, asked about her country and her parents, he chanced to hear that she was engaged to Alucceius, a young prince of the Celtiberi. On hearing this, he summoned the girl's parents and her fiancé to him.

When Alucceius arrived with the parents of his fiancée, Scipio said to him, "A young man myself, I am addressing myself to a young man, so that we may lay aside all reserve (there may be less embarrassment between us). When your fiancée was captured and brought to me by our soldiers and I heard that you loved her (*lit.* she was loved by you), I, for my part, wanted to encourage your love.

"The opportunity has been given to me of restoring your fiancée to you. I seek only one reward: that you will be friendly to the Roman people and that, if you believe I am a good man, you will know that there are many like me in the Roman state and that no nation on earth today can be named that you would rather have friendly to you and yours."

Grasping Scipio's hand, the young man called upon the gods to thank him on his behalf, since it was quite impossible for him to make any adequate return (he by no means had the ability).

The parents of the girl begged Scipio to accept a large amount (*lit.* weight) of gold that they had brought to ransom the girl. On receiving the gold, Scipio called Alucceius to him and said, "In addition to the dowry that you are going to receive from the father of your fiancée, I am giving you this gold as a gift"; and, when he had finished speaking, he ordered him to take the gold and keep it as his own.

Delighted with these gifts, Alucceius returned home, and, by praising Scipio's kindness, he persuaded his fellow-citizens (countrymen) to join the Romans as allies. Then, to help the Romans, in a few days he returned to Scipio with 1400 mounted men.

NOTES: The Celtiberi, mentioned in line 12, were a people of Middle Spain of mixed Celtic and Iberian stock.

The expression *sibi habēre* in line 32 is a legal term used in the conveyance of property rights.

**References:** Livy, XXVI, 50; Caldwell, pp. 368-373; Haaren and Poland, pp. 122-134; *Harper's Dictionary of Classical Literature and Antiquities*, p. 1425; Mills, pp. 145-147; *Smaller Classical Dictionary*, p. 259.

183 Review the distinction between the present participle active and the gerund in English. Make sure that the students recognize the difference before introducing the grammar of this lesson.

Stress the fact that a gerund is a noun; a gerundive, an adjective.

Some may be familiar with **QED** from geometry classes. Place the phrase **Quod erat dēmōnstrandum**, *which was to be proved*, on the board to illustrate the literal translation of the gerundive.

A. 1. They gave the enemy the opportunity of seeking peace, of making a journey, of building ships. 2. The women are busy telling the story, caring for the boys, seeing the place. 3. The cave provided an opportunity to conceal the animals, for us to retreat from battle, to sleep. 4. There was great difficulty in setting out, in fortifying the camp, in winning. 5. They are ready to advance, to promise mercy, to praise the staff-officers. 6. He sent soldiers to storm the town, to carry the letter, to rebuild the bridge. 7. It was difficult to go out from the camp. To defend the fatherland was the plan. Seeing is believing. 8. The end of fighting is at hand. Hope of conquering was great. It is difficult to be silent. 9. The lieutenant has come to command the soldiers, to spare the citizens, to send a letter. 10. It is right to obey one's parents. Ships were useful for carrying loads. The ships were of great use for transporting soldiers.

B. 1. ad castra mūnienda, ad sē servandōs, ad pontem aedificandum or castra mūniendī causā, suī servandī causā, pontis aedificandī causā 2. loquendī, nūntiōs mittendī, ex castris exeundī 3. in testāmentīs faciendīs, in dormiendō, in fortiter pugnandō 4. ad nāvigandum, ad nūntiōs mittendōs, ad agrōs arandōs 5. gladiīs nostrīs ūtendī, militibus imperandī, pācis petendae 6. suae filiae videndae, dīvitias suās augendī, epistulae mittendae 7. prōvinciam dēfendendam, hostēs opprimendōs, perfugās inveniendōs 8. nāvium parandārum or nāvēs parandī, legiōnum laudandārum, deīs sacrificandī 9. ad vincendum, ad hostēs aggrediendōs, ad eis magnā sapientiā imperandum

C. 1. He is engaged in advancing into the territory of the enemy. 2. He gave everyone the opportunity to return. 3. He asked his wife to stop weeping. 4. It is easy to talk but you cannot defend your town by talking. 5. I say to you that the time to bring aid is short. 6. The Gauls had crossed into Britain to wage war. 7. He ordered the ships to be made a little wider to transport a large number of horses. 8. These leaders (guides) were of great use for spying out the routes.

D. 1. Nūlla occāsio ad parentēs redeundī virgini data erat. 2. Facultās loquendī nēminī deest. 3. Maximā cupiditāte or Maximō studiō omnia quae ūsuī ad oppugnandum erant parābant. 4. Fortiter pugnandō magnam partem Hispāniae vicit. 5. Novam domum ēmī Rōmae manendī causā. 6. Suīs (virīs) potestātem suī armandī fēcit. 7. Hostēs nostrōs agrōs vāstare prohibēre facile possumus. 8. Equitēs nūllam occāsiōnem gladiīs ūtendī habēbant or Nūlla occāsio equitibus gladiīs ūtendī erat.

186 Ask the students to explain the italicized words in the following phrases and to suggest other words of similar derivation: the principal *beneficiary*, lists of *casualties*, *clemency* granted by the governor, *exemplary* behavior, *inclement* weather, delivery of the *invocation*, a *preponderance* of details, man's damnation and God's *redemption*.



## LESSON TWENTY-SIX

### Excerpt

After the opening lines quoted here, Ovid states that, since cultivation improves the fruit and adornment enhances all things, the “modern” woman also should adorn herself. The poet says that the first adornment of a woman should be her character; however, he immediately goes into a long discussion of beauty aids and how to prepare them. One recipe calls for twelve narcissus bulbs; another, for a broth made of barley.

See also Lessons Twelve, Thirteen, Fifteen and Twenty of the Teacher’s Guide.

188

### A Brave Tribune

In the first Punic war on Sicilian soil, the Carthaginian general, advancing against the Roman army, was the first to take possession of the hills and higher ground. Because the enemy were holding the better (*lit.* more suitable) position, the Roman soldiers were making their way onto dangerous ground. Foreseeing the risk, a tribune came to the consul and warned (informed) him. He said, “If you want to save the situation, you should send four hundred soldiers to that hill which must be taken and held. When the enemy sees this, all their bravest men will be most eager to make an attack and fight; and because most (*lit.* the crowd) of the enemy will attack this small band, all the four hundred will no doubt be killed. This maneuver will be most helpful to (*lit.* useful for) you, because, while the enemy are occupied in doing this, you will have time to lead your troops out of this disadvantageous spot. There is no way of safety except this.”

In reply the consul told the tribune that he ought to follow this advice; “But,” he said, “who is ready to lead those four hundred soldiers against the ranks of the enemy in (*lit.* to) that place?”

“If you find no one else,” said the tribune, “send me; I will undertake this task. I offer (*lit.* give) this life of mine to you and the state. A Roman citizen ought to be willing to die for his country.”

The tribune and the four hundred set out to die. When the Carthaginian commander saw that the Romans were marching to take the hill, all the Carthaginian infantry and cavalry were ordered to make an attack on the Romans. At once spears were hurled. The Romans were surrounded; a brave resistance was made; the battle was long and fierce. Finally the larger number (*lit.* crowd) won. No one was spared; all four hundred fell with their tribune. Meantime, while the fighting was going on there, the consul led his troops into a safe position (*lit.* safe places).

The immortal gods gave the tribune fortune in keeping with his valor. For although he had been gravely wounded and was lying among the dead, his comrades (nevertheless) found him alive. They lifted him up, and he recovered and often afterward rendered valiant service to the state.

189 Explain to the students that the gerundive is one form of deponent verbs which has a passive meaning.

194

## EXERCISES

A. 1. The lieutenant must be praised. The lieutenant must be praised by the Romans. 2. Javelins ought to be hurled. The soldiers ought to hurl the javelins. 3. They know that these places (locations) have to be fortified. They know that the citizens have to fortify these locations. 4. The task had to be accomplished. The task had to be accomplished by the messenger. 5. They did not know why the staff-officer was to be blamed. They did not know why the staff-officer was to be blamed by the leader.

B. 1. *Negōtium mihi faciendum est.* 2. *Liber mihi legendus est.* 3. *Militēs imperātōrī cohortandī erunt.* 4. *Sciō multa ā tē or ā vōbīs pollicenda esse.* 5. *Quaesivit quōmodo urbs militibus capienda esset.*

NOTE: In sentence 4, the ablative of agent is suggested for clarity.

C. 1. They believe me. I am believed *or* trusted. 2. He commanded the soldiers. The soldiers have been commanded. 3. They cannot persuade the consul to place the tribune in command of the forces. The consul cannot be persuaded to place the tribune in command of the forces. 4. They spoke to us. It was told to us. 5. He asked them why they did not announce the victory to him. He asked them why there had been fighting.

D. 1. *Negōtium militibus placet. Militibus placētur.* 2. *Rogant cūr rēgī invidet. Rogant cūr rēgī invidētur.* 3. *Mātrōnae suis filiis favent. Filiis favētur.* 4. *Sciēbat eōs nūntiō persuāsisse. Sciēbat nūntiō persuāsum esse.* 5. *Dux equitum perfugae parsit or pepercit. Perfugae parsum est.*

E. 1. He must be persuaded. I must persuade him. 2. They ought to be trusted. The leader ought to trust them. 3. They know the task must be entrusted to them. They know that the king must entrust the task to them. 4. They asked why the father should be obeyed. They asked why the boys should obey their father. 5. The enemy had to be resisted. Our men had to resist the enemy.

F. 1. *Eis resistendum est. Ab militibus eīs crēdendum est.* 2. *Militibus imperandum est. Militibus ā duce imperandum est.* 3. *Perfugae parcendum erit. Perfugae ā rēge parcendum erit.* 4. *Rogāvērunt cūr turbae irātae placendum esset. Rogāvērunt cūr turbae irātae ā coniūrātis placendum esset.* 5. *Sciēbat nūntiō crēdendum esse. Sciēbat nūntiō ab sē crēdendum esse.*

G. 1. He asked by whom Gaul had to be conquered. 2. He says that Gaul must be conquered. 3. We shall have to hold the hill by arms for many hours. 4. The consul replied that he had to adopt this plan. 5. It is not necessary for me to say anything at all concerning myself. 6. He asks why

no one is spared. 7. That day by chance it happened that many were hurt.  
8. It is proper to furnish booty for (to grant booty to) victors, it is not?  
9. The light-armed legions were ordered to make an attack on the enemy.  
10. He asked whether everyone had been persuaded to seize arms at once.

H. 1. Castra nōbīs pōnenda erunt. 2. Quaesivī cui castra pōnenda essent.  
3. Intereā *or* Interim iter ab hīs locīs ad collēs eīs faciendum erit. 4. Rogāvit  
num exercitus captus sub iugum eīs mittendus esset. 5. Putō proelium tem-  
pore tam aliēnō nōbīs nōn committendum fuisse. 6. Subitō omnēs ad  
portam cucurrērunt *or* ab omnibus ad portam concursus est. 7. Diū atque  
ācritēr prope collem pugnātum est. 8. Cūr tibi *or* vōbīs tam facile per-  
suāsū est ut centuriōnem sequerē -ris(-minī)? 9. Timēbāmus *or* Verēbā-  
mur nē nōbīs nocērētur. 10. Nūntiātum est tibi *or* vōbīs nocitum esse.

## TEACHER'S NOTES

1. The first of the two is a simple sentence. The second is a complex sentence. The third is a compound sentence. The fourth is a complex sentence. The fifth is a compound sentence. The sixth is a complex sentence. The seventh is a compound sentence. The eighth is a complex sentence. The ninth is a compound sentence. The tenth is a complex sentence. The eleventh is a compound sentence. The twelfth is a complex sentence. The thirteenth is a compound sentence. The fourteenth is a complex sentence. The fifteenth is a compound sentence. The sixteenth is a complex sentence. The seventeenth is a compound sentence. The eighteenth is a complex sentence. The nineteenth is a compound sentence. The twentieth is a complex sentence. The twenty-first is a compound sentence. The twenty-second is a complex sentence. The twenty-third is a compound sentence. The twenty-fourth is a complex sentence. The twenty-fifth is a compound sentence. The twenty-sixth is a complex sentence. The twenty-seventh is a compound sentence. The twenty-eighth is a complex sentence. The twenty-ninth is a compound sentence. The thirtieth is a complex sentence. The thirty-first is a compound sentence. The thirty-second is a complex sentence. The thirty-third is a compound sentence. The thirty-fourth is a complex sentence. The thirty-fifth is a compound sentence. The thirty-sixth is a complex sentence. The thirty-seventh is a compound sentence. The thirty-eighth is a complex sentence. The thirty-ninth is a compound sentence. The fortieth is a complex sentence. The forty-first is a compound sentence. The forty-second is a complex sentence. The forty-third is a compound sentence. The forty-fourth is a complex sentence. The forty-fifth is a compound sentence. The forty-sixth is a complex sentence. The forty-seventh is a compound sentence. The forty-eighth is a complex sentence. The forty-ninth is a compound sentence. The fiftieth is a complex sentence. The fifty-first is a compound sentence. The fifty-second is a complex sentence. The fifty-third is a compound sentence. The fifty-fourth is a complex sentence. The fifty-fifth is a compound sentence. The fifty-sixth is a complex sentence. The fifty-seventh is a compound sentence. The fifty-eighth is a complex sentence. The fifty-ninth is a compound sentence. The sixtieth is a complex sentence. The sixty-first is a compound sentence. The sixty-second is a complex sentence. The sixty-third is a compound sentence. The sixty-fourth is a complex sentence. The sixty-fifth is a compound sentence. The sixty-sixth is a complex sentence. The sixty-seventh is a compound sentence. The sixty-eighth is a complex sentence. The sixty-ninth is a compound sentence. The seventieth is a complex sentence. The seventy-first is a compound sentence. The seventy-second is a complex sentence. The seventy-third is a compound sentence. The seventy-fourth is a complex sentence. The seventy-fifth is a compound sentence. The seventy-sixth is a complex sentence. The seventy-seventh is a compound sentence. The seventy-eighth is a complex sentence. The seventy-ninth is a compound sentence. The eightieth is a complex sentence. The eighty-first is a compound sentence. The eighty-second is a complex sentence. The eighty-third is a compound sentence. The eighty-fourth is a complex sentence. The eighty-fifth is a compound sentence. The eighty-sixth is a complex sentence. The eighty-seventh is a compound sentence. The eighty-eighth is a complex sentence. The eighty-ninth is a compound sentence. The ninetieth is a complex sentence. The ninety-first is a compound sentence. The ninety-second is a complex sentence. The ninety-third is a compound sentence. The ninety-fourth is a complex sentence. The ninety-fifth is a compound sentence. The ninety-sixth is a complex sentence. The ninety-seventh is a compound sentence. The ninety-eighth is a complex sentence. The ninety-ninth is a compound sentence. The hundredth is a complex sentence.

TEACHER'S NOTES

PART TWO

Selections from  
Latin Literature



## TEACHER'S NOTES

## PART TWO

# Selections from Latin Literature

## LIVY AND NEPOS

### *Hannibal and the Romans*

#### The Exploits of Hamilcar

Hamilcar, the Carthaginian, after crossing the sea and coming into Spain, did great deeds through the favor of fortune; he subdued most mighty and warlike nations; he enriched the whole of Africa with horses, arms, men, and money. When he was planning to carry the war into Italy, in the ninth year after he had come into Spain, he was killed fighting in battle. This man's inveterate hatred toward the Romans seems to have been the special cause of the Second Punic War; for, as he was setting out for Spain, he had led his son Hannibal, a boy of almost nine, to the altar and had ordered him to swear that as soon as possible he would be an enemy of the Roman people.

After Hamilcar had been killed (in battle), Hasdrubal held command in Spain for almost eight years and did great deeds; Hannibal himself was in command of all the cavalry. When Hasdrubal was killed in his turn, the army conferred the chief command upon Hannibal. So it was that when he was less than twenty-five years old, he became commander in chief.

#### The Character of Hannibal

When Hannibal was sent to Spain, as soon as he arrived he drew the attention of the whole army to himself. The veterans imagined that Hamilcar, as he had been in his youth, had been restored to them; they saw the same determined expression, the same piercing eyes. Never was the same character more fitted for (two) tasks so opposed, (those) of obeying and of commanding. If ever an action had to be carried out courageously and resolutely, Hasdrubal never cared to place anyone else in command, and there was no leader under whom the soldiers felt more confidence or showed more daring. By no amount of exertion could his body be fatigued or his mind exhausted. He was by far the foremost of the cavalry and the infantry; he was the first to enter the fight, and, when battle had been joined, he was the last to leave the field.

## Hannibal Prepares to Attack the City of Saguntum, a Roman Ally in Spain

From the day on which he was proclaimed commander, Hannibal decided to make war on the Saguntines. But before he made the attempt, in the next three years he subdued in war all the tribes of Spain, and soon all the country beyond the Ebro except Saguntum belonged to the Carthaginians.

Accordingly, the Saguntines, in fear of Hannibal, sent envoys to Rome, to implore assistance in the war that now undoubtedly threatened them. The consuls at Rome at that time were Publius Cornelius Scipio and Tiberius Sempronius Longus. After the envoys had been brought into the senate, it was decided that ambassadors should be sent into Spain to warn Hannibal not to molest the Saguntines, allies of the Roman people. After this embassy had been decreed, and before it had been sent, it was reported that Saguntum was being attacked, (a thing) which no one had expected so soon.

Then the matter was referred anew to the senate. Some senators thought that war ought to be waged against the Carthaginians on land and sea; others thought that envoys ought to be sent to Spain. The latter view, which seemed the safest, prevailed. While the Romans were making these preparations, Saguntum was being attacked with the utmost vigor.

Meanwhile, it was reported to Hannibal that envoys had come from Rome; envoys were sent to meet them, to say that, in the present critical state (position) of affairs, Hannibal had no time to listen to the embassy.

### Hannibal Takes Saguntum

While the Romans wasted time in sending embassies, Hannibal fired the spirits of his soldiers. Both sides exerted themselves with all their might in building their fortifications and in fighting. At the same time, the scarcity of all supplies increased in consequence of the long siege, and the expectation of aid from the Romans diminished. Hannibal, attacking with his full strength, took the city; he had given orders that all the young men should be put to death. Thus in the eighth month of the siege the town was captured, with a vast quantity of booty. Many valuable objects were sent to Carthage.

(Then) Hannibal retired from there with his troops into winter quarters at New Carthage.

### Panic in Rome

At about the same time, envoys who had returned from Carthage brought back word to Rome that everything looked like war (*lit.* was hostile), and the downfall of Saguntum was announced. Such pity for

their allies, shame at not having given help, anger against the Carthaginians, fear for the supreme interests of the state—all at the same time—possessed the senators, as if the enemy were already at the gates of the city. For never had a more active or a more warlike enemy met the Romans, and never had the Roman state been so unprepared for war.

The Romans realized that the Carthaginians, a veteran enemy, always victorious, and fresh from the destruction of a most wealthy city, were about to cross the Ebro; that they would bring with them many tribes of Spain; would arouse the tribes of Gaul, who were always eager to take up arms; that the Romans must fight with the whole world in Italy and (above all) before the walls of Rome.

#### Declaration of War

In order that everything might be done according to law, before taking up arms, the Romans sent older men as envoys to Africa, to ask the Carthaginians whether Hannibal had attacked Saguntum on the authority of the state; and, if the Carthaginians said that this had been done on the authority of the state, to declare war on the Carthaginian people. After the Romans came to Carthage, an audience with the senate was granted to them. After a parley had been held in vain, one of the Roman envoys, making a fold in his toga, said, "Here we bring for you war and peace; take which you please." Immediately after these words, a cry no less savage arose, that he might give whichever he wished. Thereupon the Roman, letting the fold of his toga fall again, said, "We give war." Then all answered that they accepted it, and would carry it on in the same spirit with which they accepted it.

#### Preparations for Hannibal's Invasion of Italy

After the capture of Saguntum, Hannibal had retired into winter quarters at New Carthage. There, when he had heard what had been done and decreed at Rome and Carthage, he called together his Spanish soldiers. "I believe, comrades, that even you yourselves see that, since we have reduced all the tribes in Spain, we must either bring our military service to an end and disband our armies or else we must transfer our warfare to other lands. The tribes of Spain will flourish if we seek plunder and glory from other nations. Since, therefore, there awaits us (*lit.* is at hand) military service far from home, if anyone of you wishes to see his family, I grant him the chance. But be here, all of you, at the beginning of spring."

#### Hannibal's Dream

At the beginning of spring they assembled. Setting out from his winter quarters, he led his army along the coast to the River Ebro. There in his sleep he beheld a youth of god-like appearance, who said that he had



been sent by Jupiter to act as a guide to Hannibal on his march to Italy. At first, filled with awe, Hannibal followed the figure without glancing round him or looking back; then, when he did look back, he saw behind him a serpent of marvelous bulk and, behind the serpent, a storm cloud and a crash of thunder. Then, when he asked what the portent indicated, he heard that it was the devastation of Italy.

#### Hannibal Crosses the Ebro and the Pyrenees

Gladdened by this dream, he led his troops across the Ebro, after sending ahead envoys to win over with gifts the good will of the Gauls, through whose territories the army had to be led, and to reconnoiter the passes of the Alps. He took across the Ebro 90,000 infantry and 12,000 cavalry. Then he reduced to submission the tribes lying at the foot of the Pyrenees Mountains, and led his army through the passes of the Pyrenees. Advancing through Gaul, he reached the Rhone River.

#### The Roman Consul Scipio Stops at the Rhone on his Way to Spain

Before Hannibal crossed the Rhone, Publius Cornelius Scipio set out from the city with sixty warships, (moved) along the coast of Etruria, and reached Massilia; at the mouth of the Rhone he pitched camp, scarcely believing that Hannibal had passed the Pyrenees Mountains. Uncertain in what place he should meet Hannibal, and his soldiers having not yet sufficiently recovered from the tossing of the voyage, he sent meanwhile 300 chosen horsemen in advance to make a complete reconnaissance.

#### Hannibal Crosses the Rhone in Spite of the Opposition of the Volcae

Hannibal had now reached the territories of the Volcae, who have their dwellings around both banks of the Rhone. The Volcae had fled from the nearer bank, and, after transporting almost all their people across the Rhone, were holding the farther bank with arms. With gifts Hannibal persuaded the other people who lived by the river to collect boats from all sides and build (others). A vast number of vessels, therefore, was brought together, for the purpose of taking the army across the Rhone.

And now, when all preparations for crossing had been completed, the Volcae, holding all the bank, menaced him from the other side. In order to distract their attention, Hannibal ordered Hanno (to set out) at the first watch (and) to advance one day's march up the river with part of his Spanish forces, and, crossing the river, to lead the column by a roundabout route so as to attack the enemy in the rear. Timber was cut and rafts constructed, and horses and men were taken over. A camp was pitched near the river, and the soldiers, weary from the march by

night and from all their hard work, were refreshed by one day's rest. On the following day they set out, and by means of a smoke signal gave notice that they had crossed the river and were not far away. When Hannibal learned this, he gave the signal to cross. The Volcae raised a loud shout and, brandishing their shields over their heads and shaking their spears violently in their hands, met the Carthaginians on the bank. Suddenly a more alarming shout arose in the rear (of the Volcae), for Hanno had taken their camp. The Volcae forced their way through where the way seemed to lie open and fled to their various villages. Hannibal brought over the rest of his troops and pitched camp.

### Hannibal Takes his Elephants across the Rhone

Some have written that the elephants were taken over on rafts. (The soldiers) stretched out one raft, 200 feet long and 50 feet wide, from the land into the river in the manner of a bridge so that the elephants might move forward boldly, as over solid ground; a second raft, 100 feet long, was joined to this. Then elephants—ladies first—were driven along the larger raft, as if along a road; they crossed over on to the smaller raft and were towed by boats to the other bank.

### The First Skirmish between the Romans and the Carthaginians

While the elephants were being taken over, Hannibal had sent 500 Numidian horsemen to the Roman camp to learn the position, numbers, and intentions of the (Roman) forces. Three hundred Roman cavalry, sent from the mouth of the Rhone, met these Numidians. A battle took place, fiercer than was to be expected from the number of the combatants. The slaughter was equal on both sides, but the flight and panic of the Numidians gave the victory to the Romans. This, which was at the same time the beginning and the omen of the war, portended a victory for the Romans.

### Hannibal's Speech to his Soldiers

Following this incident, each leader's cavalry returned to him. Hannibal was uncertain whether he should continue into Italy the march he had begun or should join battle with the Roman army that first met him. After he decided to make for Italy, he summoned an assembly and said: "You, victorious through so many years, did not leave Spain until you had subdued all the tribes and lands embraced by two seas. You crossed the Ebro to wipe out the name of the Romans and to free the whole world. After surmounting the Pyrenees Mountains and crossing the Rhone, that mighty river, you are within sight of the Alps, the other side of which belongs to Italy. Therefore look forward to finishing your march on the plain which lies between the Tiber and the battlements of Rome." He ordered his soldiers, roused by these words (of encouragement), to refresh themselves and prepare for the march.

## Hannibal Crosses the Alps

On the third day after Hannibal had moved his camp from the bank of the Rhone, Publius Cornelius had come to the camp of the enemy. When he saw the deserted camp, he returned to the sea and his ships, thinking that he would more safely and more easily meet Hannibal as the latter descended from the Alps. Meanwhile Hannibal had reached the Alps without interference on the part of the Gauls who lived in that district. On the ninth day they reached the crest of the Alps. For two days the weary soldiers were allowed to rest. Some draft animals, which had fallen down among the rocks, reached the camp by following the tracks of the column. A fall of snow added a terrible fear.

At daybreak the march began. When the soldiers were moving along with the greatest difficulty, Hannibal ordered them to halt on a projecting height, which commanded a wide and distant view, and pointed Italy out to them. "It is the walls," he said, "not only of Italy but also of the city of Rome that you are now scaling; after one battle or a second battle you will have in your hands and in your power the citadel and capital of Italy."

Thus, following many struggles, they reached Italy in the fifth month after leaving New Carthage; fifteen days were spent in overcoming the difficulties of the Alps.

### Beginning of the Campaign in Italy

When the consul Publius Cornelius had come by ship to Pisa and had received a new army, he wished to join battle with the enemy who had not yet recuperated. But when the consul came to Placentia, Hannibal had already left his camp. The armies were now almost in sight (of each other); the two leaders had come together, each filled with a certain admiration of the other. For the name of Hannibal was well known among the Romans even before the downfall of Saguntum, and Hannibal believed Scipio to be an outstanding man.

### The Battle at the Ticinus

The Romans moved their camp to the Ticinus, bridged the river, and constructed a blockhouse to protect the bridge. While the enemy (*i.e.*, the Romans) were engaged in the work, Hannibal sent Maharbal with 500 horsemen to lay waste the fields of the allies of the Roman people. After the bridge had been completed, the Roman army was led across and took up its position five miles from Hannibal. In Hannibal's army, all called for battle with one heart and one voice.

Scipio set out with his cavalry to the camp of the enemy to spy out his (Hannibal's) numbers and the type of troops he employed; he met Hannibal who had himself also advanced with some horsemen to reconnoiter the district. On account of the huge clouds of dust raised by so

many horses, neither of the two parties at first caught sight of the other. The two columns halted and got ready for battle.

Hardly had the battle shout been raised when the javelin-throwers, whom Scipio had placed in front, fled to the second line among the reserves. Then for some time the cavalry kept up a fight with doubtful success, until the Numidians, who had been in the wings, wheeling around, appeared at the rear (of the Romans). A wound received by the consul increased the terror of the Romans; in close order (formation), however, the (Roman) cavalry protected the consul not only with their arms but also with their bodies and brought him back to camp. This was the first battle with Hannibal in Italy.

#### Maneuvers after the Battle. Clastidium Surrenders to Hannibal

Although Scipio had been severely wounded, nevertheless in the fourth watch, in the silence of the night, he set out and moved his camp to the Trebia River to higher ground and hills impracticable for cavalry. Horsemen sent by Hannibal would have thrown the vanguard of the Romans into confusion had they not, in their eagerness for plunder, turned their march aside to the empty Roman camp; thus the enemy slipped out of their hands.

Scipio selected and fortified a spot which was near the river and seemed completely safe for a camp. When Hannibal had encamped nearby, he sent troops to the village of Clastidium, where the Romans had brought a large supply of grain. Because the commandant of the (Roman) garrison was bribed, Clastidium was surrendered to Hannibal.

At the Trebia, the second storm of the Punic War wreaked its fury (*lit. raged*) in the consulship of Sempronius. Then our very shrewd enemy, on a cold and snowy day, kept themselves warm with fires and oil, and, though they were men that came from the south and a warm sun, defeated us with the aid of our own winter.

#### Alarm at Rome

The news of this disaster was brought to Rome and such terror was aroused that (men) believed that the enemy was already advancing on the city in hostile array, and that there was no hope, no source of help by which they could ward off (*lit. keep off*) the violence of the enemy from their gates and fortifications. When one consul had been defeated at the Ticinus, they had recalled the other (consul) from Sicily. But now, with two consuls, two armies defeated, what other generals, what other legions were they to summon? When the citizens were so frightened, Sempronius reached Rome, having passed through the cavalry of the enemy at great risk. After holding the elections, he returned to his winter camp. Gnaeus Servilius and Gaius Flaminius were elected consuls.



## Hannibal Marches South

Now spring was coming on. Hannibal accordingly moved out of his winter quarters. He crossed the Apennines, heading for Etruria. In the course of this march he suffered from such a severe disease of the eyes that thereafter he never did have the full use of his right eye. At Lake Trasimene he surrounded and killed the consul. For the Carthaginian cavalry, shielded by the mist, suddenly attacked the combatants in the rear. We can complain neither of the gods nor of prodigies; for among other things, eagles that refused to advance and a violent earthquake foretold the disaster that threatened (the Romans).

### Tidings of Fresh Disaster Reach Rome.

#### Quintus Fabius Maximus Appointed Dictator

On receiving word of this third disaster, the people appointed Quintus Fabius Maximus dictator and Marcus Minucius Rufus master of horse. These men were commissioned by the senate to strengthen the walls of the city, to post garrisons, and to tear down the bridges on the rivers. It was decreed that the dictator should take over the army from the consul Servilius; he was to enroll from the body of citizens and allies as many infantry and cavalry as seemed best.

After taking over the consul's army, the dictator reconnoitered the roads with the utmost care, and led his troops toward the enemy, though resolved nowhere to trust (*lit. commit*) himself to fortune, except so far as necessity should compel him. Fabius led his column along the high ground at a moderate distance from the enemy, so that he never lost touch with Hannibal and never came to grips with him. So Fabius' shrewd policy of holding back (from battle) stemmed the tide of Roman disasters for a short time (*lit. made a little of interval for Roman disasters*). Hannibal realized that the Romans had chosen a general who was waging war by reason, not by blind chance, but the tactics of Fabius were despised by soldiers and civilians alike.

### The Battle of Cannae

Hannibal moved his forces into Apulia. Near the village of Cannae he pitched his camp, which faced away from the wind, which carries clouds of dust over the dry plains. The consuls followed Hannibal and, when they reached the vicinity of Cannae, built two camps near the River Aufidus.

On the following day Varro, whom the lot had made commander for that day, without consulting his colleague at all, displayed the signal for battle, and led his forces drawn up (for action) across the river. Paulus followed, although he did not approve (his colleague's plan). Hannibal so drew up his men that he fought with the aid of wind, dust, and sun. So two very large Roman armies were cut down until Hanni-



bal said to his soldiers, "Spare your steel." One of the Roman generals fled, the other was killed.

#### Maharbal's Advice to Hannibal

When the rest (of his officers) were congratulating Hannibal and urging him to grant the remainder of the day and the following night to his exhausted soldiers for rest, Maharbal, the commander of the cavalry, thinking that they ought to advance to Rome at once, said, "That you may realize what has been accomplished by this battle, (I prophesy that) in five days you will be feasting as victor in the Capitol. Follow me; I will go in advance with the cavalry." "I commend your enthusiasm," said Hannibal, "but we need time for consideration (*lit.* there is need of time for forming a plan)." Then Maharbal (replied), "The gods do not bestow upon one man all their blessings: you know how to win a victory, Hannibal; you do not know how to use your victory." That day's delay is thought to have saved the city and the empire.

#### Hannibal at the Anio

Five years later, Hannibal moved his camp to the River Anio three miles from the city. There he pitched his camp. He himself with 2,000 horsemen advanced to the Colline Gate and, from the nearest possible point, surveyed the walls and the site of the city.

On the following day, Hannibal crossed the Anio and led out his troops into battle array, and the consuls did not decline battle. When the armies had been drawn up on either side to engage in a battle so important that the city of Rome was the victor's reward, a heavy rain mixed with hail threw both lines into confusion so thoroughly that they retreated to their respective camps, scarcely retaining their arms. And on the following day when the lines had been drawn up in the same spot, a similar storm separated them.

#### Hasdrubal Marches to Italy.

##### The Battle of the Metaurus River, 207 B.C.

It was agreed among the Carthaginians that Hasdrubal, Hannibal's brother, should lead an army from Spain into Italy. Concern about his arrival increased among the Romans from day to day. All thought that Hasdrubal must be met as he descended from the Alps and that Hannibal must be kept busy at the same time with his own campaign. The consuls, Marcus Livius and Gaius Claudius Nero, set out from the city by different routes.

Meanwhile four horsemen, sent with a letter to Hannibal by Hasdrubal, were captured by the Romans after traversing almost the whole length of Italy and were conducted to the consul Claudius. Claudius thought that he must try (venture) something unexpected. After send-

ing the letter to the senate at Rome, he chose from the whole army 6,000 infantry and 1,000 cavalry and led them to his colleague by forced (*lit.* the longest possible) marches. When at last he was now approaching his colleague's camp, Claudius halted, so that his arrival might not be learned by the enemy. In the silence of night they entered (the camp) and were received with unbounded joy on the part of all.

On the following day, there was a mighty struggle. As the fighting grew more violent, the elephants ranged between the two lines as if uncertain to whom they belonged, not unlike ships drifting without tillers. On all sides, in front and flank and rear, the Spaniards were cut to pieces. Finally when the fortune of the day was with the enemy (*i.e.*, the Romans), unwilling to survive so great an army which had followed his reputation, Hasdrubal set spurs to his horse, and plunged into the midst of a Roman cohort; there he fell fighting.

The consul Claudius, on returning to his camp, ordered the head of Hasdrubal, which he had carefully kept and brought with him, to be thrown before the outposts of the enemy; he ordered two prisoners, freed (from their chains), to go to Hannibal and disclose what had happened. Stricken by the grievous blow which had fallen on his country and on his family, Hannibal is said to have declared that he recognized the doom that awaited Carthage.

#### The Romans Carry the War into Spain and Africa

It was now certain that Hannibal, even on his own admission, could be beaten, but the Roman people, full of confidence, decided to subdue their most cruel enemy on his own soil of Africa. Accordingly, under the command of Scipio, very large forces were sent to Africa. Finally Scipio shook in siege the very gates of Carthage.

Nothing further was done by Hannibal in Italy; for Carthaginian envoys came to him recalling him to Africa. It is said that he groaned and almost shed tears when he heard the words of the envoys. "Now," he said, "not obscurely (*i.e.*, by crooked means) but openly they, who forbade reinforcements and money to be sent (to me), are recalling me. So you see, it is not the Roman nation, so often defeated and routed, that has vanquished Hannibal, but the Carthaginian senate by its jealousy and envy."

#### Hannibal's Conference with Scipio

Hannibal had reached Hadrumetum, where a few days were spent to refresh the soldiers after their sea voyage. Then, informed that all the country about Carthage was held by Roman arms, he hastened to Zama. Zama is five days' march from Carthage. Then scouts, captured by the Roman sentinels, were taken to Scipio. Scipio ordered these men to be led around through the camp wherever they wished. When they had examined everything to their satisfaction, he sent them back to Hannibal.

The report given by these scouts was anything but pleasant hearing for Hannibal (*lit.* Hannibal heard nothing of those things which were announced, with a glad heart). He sent a messenger to Scipio (to ask) that he give him an opportunity of conferring with him (*i.e.*, that he grant him a conference). Accordingly a conference took place between them to discuss terms of peace. When peace was not established, each returned from the conference to his own men, and reported that their discussion had been fruitless, and that the matter must be decided by arms.

#### The Decisive Battle of Zama, 202 B.C.

There was no more notable day in the history of the Roman Empire than that on which these two eminent commanders drew up their battle lines at close quarters. Following his defeat, in two days and two nights Hannibal reached Hadrumetum, which is about 300 miles from Zama. Summoned thence, he returned to Carthage in the thirty-sixth year after he had set out from there as a boy. In the senate-house he admitted that he had been beaten not only in the battle but also in the war, and that there was no hope of safety anywhere but in peace.

#### Hannibal in the East

According to tradition, Publius Scipio Africanus was a member of that legation, and spoke to Hannibal at Ephesus. When Africanus asked who he thought had been the greatest commander, Hannibal answered, Alexander, king of Macedonia, because, with a small force, he had defeated very many armies, and because he had traversed the most distant shores, which no man ever hoped to visit.

When Scipio asked whom he placed second, he said, Pyrrhus, because no one had chosen the sites of his camps and arranged his troops more cleverly; he had possessed, too, the art of winning popularity to such a degree that the nations of Italy preferred to live under the rule of a foreign king to living under that of the Roman people.

When Scipio asked whom he regarded as the third, he said, "Myself, undoubtedly." Then Scipio smiled: "What would you say if you had conquered me?" "Then I should say that I surpass both Alexander and Pyrrhus and all other commanders."

#### The End of Hannibal's Life

It chanced that in Rome envoys of King Prusias were dining with Flamininus and that one of them said that Hannibal was in Bithynia. Flamininus reported this to the senate. The senators sent envoys to Bithynia to ask the king to surrender Hannibal to them. Prusias did not

dare to refuse the envoys; but he asked them not to demand from him anything that (*lit.* that they would not demand that to be done by him which) violated the law of hospitality; they themselves might arrest him if they could, they would easily find the place where he was.

When the envoys of the Romans had come to his house and had surrounded it with a great body of troops, a slave, looking out from the door, told Hannibal that an unusually large number of armed men were to be seen. Hannibal ordered him to go about to all the doors of the building and to hasten to inform him whether he was beset in the same way on every side. When the slave had told him that all the exits were guarded, Hannibal knew that it was not by chance, that it was he whom they were after. "Let us free the Roman people," he said, "from the anxiety they have so long experienced, since they think it tedious to wait for an old man's death," and, mindful of his former deeds of valor, he took poison, which he always carried with him.

Thus that gallant man, after having performed many and varied labors, entered into rest in his seventieth year.

## CAESAR

### The Military Background of Caesar's Exploits

About 121 B.C., the Romans annexed part of Southern Gaul and converted it into the province of Narbonensis, often simply called Provincia, "the Province." (See the map on p. 314 of the text to locate the Province and other places referred to in this note.) North of the Province in Gaul lived the Celts, a warlike people divided into many tribes. Ancient Gaul was a great fertile country, which supported a dense population. The Gauls had received much of their civilization from the Greek city of Massilia (now Marseilles) on the Mediterranean coast. The people made their living chiefly by farming.

East of the Rhine were the barbarous Germans. About 70 B.C., a powerful German tribe under the leadership of Ariovistus crossed the Rhine and seized lands belonging to the Gauls. The German tribes were moving west; this migration, if unchecked, would have thrown Gaul into confusion, and might possibly have led to a German invasion of Narbonensis and even of Italy.

A further threat to Rome came from the Helvetii, who occupied much of what is now Switzerland. About 60 B.C., the whole nation of the Helvetii decided to leave its territories and to seek a new home in the fertile lands of western Gaul. The Helvetii spent two years in preparing for the march.

In 59 B.C., Julius Caesar was consul at Rome. He secured for himself the position of governor of Illyricum, Cisalpine Gaul, and Narbonensis. This appointment gave him command of an army consisting of four legions. (See p. 255 of the text.) With his entry into Gaul in 58 B.C. begins the most glorious part of Caesar's military career. With limited military training and without extensive experience, he quickly became a great master of the art of war—one of the greatest of all generals.

The Helvetii had fixed March 28, 58 B.C., as the day on which all their people were to assemble at the bank of the Rhone. After being refused permission to march through the Province, they left Helvetia by a more northern route. Caesar, who had no wish to see the Helvetii



settle in Gaul, caught up with them, defeated them with great slaughter, and drove the survivors back to their former home.

Then he moved north, and in the same summer won a great victory over Ariovistus and his Germans and compelled them to recross the Rhine.

In 57 B.C., the Belgae, who lived in the northeast corner of Gaul, threatened to give Caesar trouble. He invaded their country, and met with a most stubborn resistance from the tribe of the Nervii. They fell upon Caesar's army so fiercely that the general could neither form his line nor issue commands. But Roman courage prevailed. Few of the Nervii survived. All Northern Gaul fell into Caesar's hands.

During the next year, 56 B.C., Caesar was occupied in the northwest corner of Gaul. The Veneti, a maritime people, built their towns on headlands where the shallow water prevented the approach of the Roman ships. Eventually Caesar's ships met the navy of the Veneti at sea. Caesar recounts how his men, with scythes fastened to long poles, cut the enemy's tackle. Caesar's victory was followed by the submission of the Veneti and their allies.

In 55 B.C., Caesar decided to cross the Rhine. It was not his object to conquer new territory, but rather to impress the Germans with his power. His engineers built a most ingenious bridge, which Caesar describes in detail (*De Bello Gallico*, IV, 17). After spending eighteen days east of the Rhine and striking terror into the Germans, he withdrew into Gaul and destroyed the bridge.

It is at this point that Caesar set out on his invasion of Britain (1. 601). Because the Britons, who were mainly of Celtic stock, had come to the aid of their kinsmen in Gaul, Caesar thought it advisable to attack them on their home ground and thus put a stop to their sending aid to his enemies.

## **1. Britain, Gaul, and Germany**

### **A. BRITAIN**

#### **The Geography of Britain**

The island is triangular in shape, and one of its sides is opposite Gaul. One angle of this side, near Kent, where almost all ships from Gaul put in, looks toward the east, and the lower one faces south. This side extends about 500 miles. The second side lies toward Spain and the west. In this direction lies Ireland, smaller by one half, as it is thought, than Britain, but the distance across is the same as from Gaul to Britain. Halfway across is an island, called the Isle of Man; several smaller

islands are also supposed to lie near, in which, according to some writers, at the time of the winter solstice, there is continuous night for thirty consecutive days. In our inquiries about this subject, we ascertained nothing, except that, by exact measurements with the water clock, we perceived the nights to be shorter there than on the continent. The length of this side, as the natives think, is 700 miles. The third side is toward the north, and no land is opposite it, but an angle of that side looks principally toward Germany. This side is considered to be 800 miles in length. Thus the whole island is 2,000 miles (twenty times 100 miles) in circumference.

### The Inhabitants and Resources of Britain

The interior portion of Britain is inhabited by those who are said to have been born in the island: the maritime portion, by those who had passed over from the country of the Belgae for the purpose of plunder and of making war; after the war they stayed there and began to till the lands. The number of the people is countless and their buildings exceedingly numerous, for the most part closely resembling those of the Gauls, and the number of cattle is very great. They use either gold coins or iron bars of fixed weight instead of coins. Tin is produced in the interior; near the sea, iron, but only in small quantities. The bronze that they use is imported. As in Gaul, there is timber of every description except beech and fir. They do not think it right to eat hares, chickens, and geese, but they keep them for pastime and pleasure. The climate is more temperate than in Gaul, as the cold is less severe.

### Customs of the Britons

The most highly civilized of all these tribes are the inhabitants of Kent, which is entirely a maritime district, and they differ but little from the Gallic manner of life. Most of the inhabitants of the interior do not sow crops, but live on milk and meat, and are clothed with skins. All the Britons, without exception, dye themselves with woad, which produces a bluish color, and thus they present a terrifying appearance in battle. They let their hair grow long, and shave the whole of the body except the head and upper lip.

## B. GAUL

### The Geography and Peoples of Gaul

Gaul as a whole is divided into three parts: one of these is inhabited by the Belgae, a second by the Aquitani, (and) a third by those who in their own language are called Celts, in ours, Gauls. These all differ from one another in language, customs, and laws. The Gauls (Celts) are separated from the Aquitani by the Garonne River, from the Belgae, by the Marne and the Seine.

Of all these, the bravest are the Belgae because they are farthest from the civilization and refinement of the Province and are very seldom visited by traders bringing in commodities which tend to weaken the character; moreover, they are neighbors to the Germans, who live across the Rhine, and are constantly waging war with them. And for this reason the Helvetii, too, surpass the rest of the Gallic peoples in warlike vigor, because almost every day they fight in battle with the Germans, either repelling them from their own territory, or themselves carrying on war in the enemy's territory (either in defensive or in offensive warfare).

One section (*lit.* division of them), which, as was said, the Gauls (Celts) occupy, begins at the Rhone River and is bounded by the Garonne River, the ocean, and the territories of the Belgae; on the side of the Sequani and Helvetii, it also touches the Rhine; it lies to the north. (The territories of) the Belgae begin at the far boundary of (Celtic) Gaul, stretch to the mouth of the Rhine, and face northeast. Aquitania extends from the Garonne River to the Pyrenees Mountains and the part of the ocean near Spain, and faces northwest.

### Political Conditions in Gaul

It does not appear to be inappropriate to describe the customs of Gaul and of Germany and (to describe) in what respects the two peoples differ from one another. Factions exist in Gaul, not only in all the tribes and in all the cantons and districts, but, we might almost say, in separate households. The leaders of those parties are those who, in the judgment of their fellows, are considered to have the highest authority so that to their decision and judgment, the final settlement of all cases and plans is referred. That practice seems to have become established in ancient times for this purpose, that no man of the people should lack assistance against a more powerful neighbor: for each chief does not allow his followers to be oppressed or defrauded; otherwise, he would have no authority among his own people.

### (a) The Three Classes of Gauls; the Power of the Druids

In all Gaul there are only two orders of men who are of any account and distinction; for the common people are treated almost as slaves, who never dare to act on their own initiative and are never admitted to the councils. The greater part of them, whenever they are oppressed either by debt or the heavy burden of tribute or the tyranny of the powerful, bind themselves to become vassals to the nobility, who exercise over them the same power that lords usually exercise over their serfs. Now one of these two classes is that of the Druids, the other, that of the Knights. The Druids take charge of religious ceremonies, regulate public and private sacrifices, and interpret religious questions. Great numbers of youths gather about them to be taught the secrets of their art, and the Druids are held in great respect among them (the Gauls). For they decide in almost all disputes, public and private, and if any crime has been committed, if any murder has been done, if there is any dispute about succession to property or about boundaries, they also decide it, determining rewards and penalties, and if any one, either individual or tribe, does not abide by their decree, they excommunicate him—which is the greatest penalty (that can be inflicted) among them. For those who lie under condemnation of this sentence are considered as wicked criminals; all men move out of their path, shun their approach and conversation, and avoid their company as contagious; they are not permitted the right of appeal, though they ask for it, nor are they permitted to discharge any office in the government. Presiding over all these Druids is a chief Druid, who has the highest authority among them. On his death, if there is anyone who surpasses the others in merit, he succeeds, but if there are several candidates of equal rank, the leadership is decided by the vote of the Druids, or sometimes by force of arms. At a fixed time of the year, they hold their meetings in a consecrated spot, in the territory of the Carnutes, which is considered the center of all Gaul. To this place, all who have disputes assemble from all sides, and they obey the decisions and judgments of the Druids. The whole Druidical system is thought to have originated in Britain, and to have been transferred from there to Gaul, for even to this day those who desire to be perfectly skilled in that science generally set out for Britain to learn it.

### (b) The Privileges of the Druids; their Education and Beliefs

The Druids are accustomed to be exempt from military service and do not pay taxes along with other people. Encouraged by such great inducements, many persons voluntarily assemble to receive this train-

ing and others are sent by their parents and relatives. There they are said to learn by heart a great number of verses. Accordingly, some remain under training for twenty years. They do not think it right to entrust their teachings to writing, although for most other purposes, such as public and private records, they make use of Greek characters.

Their purpose, I suppose, is twofold: they do not wish their teachings to become common property or their disciples to trust to documents and to pay less attention to their memories, for most people find that if they rely on documents, they are less diligent in study and their memories are weakened. They especially desire to convince men of this, that the soul never dies, but transmigrates after death from one body to another, and they think that men are especially aroused by this belief to courage, as they are filled with contempt for death. Moreover, they have many discussions concerning the stars and their motion, the size of the universe and the world, the nature of things, and the strength and power of the immortal gods, and they hand down their teachings to the young men.

### The Knights

The second of these two classes consists of the knights, who, whenever there is need and any war breaks out, either offensive or defensive (and this happened almost every year before Caesar's arrival), all engage in battle, and the more distinguished in birth and resources each man is, the greater number of vassals and dependents attend him. This is the only sign of influence and power that they recognize.

### Gallic Customs

#### (a) Human Sacrifices

The country of Gaul as a whole is remarkably superstitious and for this reason those who are suffering from the more grievous diseases and those who are engaged in the perils of battle, either offer or make a vow to offer human sacrifices, employing the Druids as attendants for such sacrifices, because they think the gods can never be appeased except by the death of one man for another. They have also established sacrifices of the same kind in the name of the state. Others have large (hollow) images, whose limbs, woven out of twigs, they fill with living men; when these figures are set on fire, the men perish, beset with flames. They believe that the punishment of thieves, highwaymen, and other offenders is the more acceptable to the gods, but, when such persons are lacking, they resort even to the sacrifice of the innocent.



## (b) The Gallic Gods

Of the gods, they reverence Mercury most, and they have many images erected in his honor. They regard him as the inventor of all arts and consider that he points out the road and accompanies them on their journeys. They believe him to have very great influence over the acquisition of money and over trade. Next in esteem to Mercury is Apollo, then Mars, Jupiter, and Minerva, of whom they have the same beliefs as other countries; namely, that Apollo can cure diseases, that Minerva first taught mankind arts and handicrafts, that Jupiter is the supreme deity, and that Mars presides in battle. Therefore, whenever they determine to engage in battle, they dedicate a great part of the spoils that they expect to obtain to Mars, and when they obtain the victory, they offer up all the cattle they have taken (on his altars). The rest of the things they gather in one place, and in several states one may see heaps of such spoils reared on consecrated ground. It has not often happened that anyone has dared, in defiance of religious scruples, to conceal at home (any part of the) spoils or to carry away what has been consecrated; for that offense, the most severe punishment with torture has been prescribed.

## (c) Origin of the Gauls; their Treatment of Boys

All the Gauls believe themselves to be descended from father Pluto, and they say that this is the tradition of the Druids. And for this reason, they determine all periods of time by the number, not of days, but of nights. Birthdays and the beginning of their months and years, they reckon on the principle that day comes after night. In the other customs of daily life they differ, generally speaking, from other people in this respect, in that they never permit their children to appear in public with them, except when they are of sufficient age to perform military service; they consider it unseemly for a son, while still a boy, to appear in public in the sight of his father.

## (d) Dowries; Powers of the Head of the Family; Funeral Rites

The husbands, after making due reckoning, put into a common fund from their own resources as much wealth as they have received as dowry from their wives. The two sums are taken together, an account is kept, and the profits are preserved: whichever of the two survives receives the contribution of both, together with the income of previous years. The men have power of life and death over their wives, as over their children, and when the head of a family of high birth dies, his near

relatives assemble, and in the matter of his death, if there is any suspicion, they have the power to cause the widows to be put under cross-examination, as is done with slaves, and if their guilt is proved, they burn them to death with all kinds of tortures. Their funerals are very sumptuous and magnificent considering the Gallic standard of living. All things which they think were dear to them when alive, even their animals, are cast into the fire, and shortly before our time, those vassals and dependents who were known to be best beloved by their masters, were burned with them at the close of the regular funeral rites.

#### (e) Powers of the Magistrates

Those states (among them) which are the most esteemed for prudent administration, have it established by law, that, if anyone learns anything of public concern from his neighbors by rumor or report, he shall report it to the magistrate without divulging it to anyone else, because it has been found that rash and ignorant persons are often alarmed by false rumors and urged to rash acts and to make decisions regarding matters of the highest importance. The magistrates, therefore, suppress what they think (*lit.* have thought) fit to conceal, and reveal to the common people what they deem (*lit.* deemed) to be of advantage. One is not allowed to discuss state affairs anywhere but in the public assembly.

## C. GERMANY

### Religious Customs; Mode of Life

From these customs (of the Gauls), the Germans differ greatly. For neither do they have Druids to preside in sacred rites, nor do they indulge in sacrifices themselves. They reckon among the gods only those they behold and those by whose power they are openly helped, such as the Sun, the Fire-god, and the Moon; the others they have not even heard of. Their whole life is spent in hunting and in the pursuits of military affairs; they accustom themselves to labor and hardship from childhood.

### Ownership of Land

They do not pay much attention to agriculture. A large portion of their food consists of milk, cheese, and meat, nor has any one a definite area of land or fields of his own, but the magistrates and chiefs annually distribute to the clans and kinsmen as much land as they think best and in whatever locality they please; a year later the magistrates compel them to move elsewhere. They adduce several reasons for this custom: lest, won over by long association, they should change their desire for waging war for an agricultural life; lest they become eager to acquire extensive estates, and the more powerful drive the weaker from their possessions; lest they should learn to build too carefully to avoid the summer's heat and the winter's cold; to prevent a desire for wealth from arising, a cause from which factions and dissensions spring up; and in order that they may keep the common people in a contented state of mind, since each one may see his own means placed on an equality with those of the most powerful.

### Tribal Isolation; Military Leaders; Administration of Justice

It is the greatest pride of the (several) states to devastate the areas adjacent to their frontiers and to have a stretch of unoccupied land as wide as possible around them. For they consider it a proof of valor that their neighbors should be driven out and retire from their lands, and that no one should dare to settle nearby; besides, they think that, in this way, they will be safer, when the fear of a sudden attack is removed. Whenever a state wages a defensive or offensive war, officers are chosen to direct the war and to have the power of life and death. In time of peace they do not have common magistrates but the chief of every district and canton administers justice (passes judgment) and settles all disputes among his own people.

Acts of brigandage, which take place beyond the boundaries of each state, involve no disgrace; they say that they are undertaken to train their young men and to lessen idleness. When any chief declares in a general assembly that he will be their leader, those who approve the leader and the cause rise up to offer their services: (for doing so) they are applauded by the populace. Those who (have volunteered and) have not followed are looked upon as traitors or deserters and are never trusted (*lit.* confidence is denied them) after that. They do not think it right to harm a guest: those who come to them for any reason whatever, they protect against wrongdoing and consider their persons as sacred. The homes of all are thrown open to them and they share their food with them.

### The Gauls and Germans Compared

There was once a time when the Gauls were superior in valor to the Germans and actually made war upon them, and on account of their excess population and scarcity of land, they would send colonies across the Rhine. As a result of this, the most fertile parts of Germany, lying around the Hercynian forest (which, I see, was known by report to Eratosthenes and certain Greeks, who call it Orcynia) were taken possession of and were settled by the Volcae and by the Tectosages. The latter continue (live) there to this day. They have the highest reputation for fair dealing and courage. The Germans still live in the same hardship, privation, and endurance as before: their food and clothing (physical training) are the same. On the other hand, the Gauls, because of the proximity of the (Roman) provinces and familiarity with luxuries from across the sea, are supplied with many articles to have and to use (*lit.* for different uses). Having become accustomed little by little to defeat, and having been conquered in many battles, they no longer pretend to compare themselves in point of valor with the Germans.

### The Hercynian Forest

#### (a) Extent: Animals

The Hercynian forest, mentioned above, is nine days' journey in breadth for an unencumbered traveler, for in no other way can it (the width) be determined, because the Germans are ignorant of the use of measuring systems. It commences in the confines of the Helvetii, Nemetes, and Rauraci, and extends in a course parallel to the river Danube, as far as the territories of the Daci and Anartes. From there, it curves to the left, turning away from the river and, owing to its extent, touches the boundaries of many countries; nor is there any person belonging to this part of Germany who can say that he either has gone to the

limit of that forest, although he had advanced a journey of sixty days, or has heard where it begins. It is agreed that many kinds of wild animals, which have never been seen in other places, inhabit the district; of these the following differ most widely from the others and seem worthy of record.

#### (b) The Reindeer

There is an ox, like a stag in shape, only with one horn that is planted between its ears in the middle of its forehead, and which is higher and straighter than the horns of our cattle. From its top, branches spread out wide, just like open hands. The characteristics of both males and females are the same, and the shape and size of their horns are identical.

#### (c) The Elk

There are also animals that are called elk. The shape of these and their dappled skins are much like goats, but in size they surpass them a little. They have blunt horns and have legs without knots or joints. They do not lie down for the purpose of rest, nor, if they have been knocked down by any accident, can they raise or lift themselves up. Trees serve as resting places for them. They lean against them and thus reclining only slightly, they take their rest. Whenever the hunters observe, from the tracks of these animals, their usual place of retreat, they either undermine all the trees there about the roots, or else cut into them so far that, to all appearances, the trees are standing firmly (*lit.* so far that the perfect appearance of them standing is left). But when the animals lean against them, as is their custom, the unsupported trees are knocked down by the weight of the animals, which fall down themselves along with the trees.

#### (d) The Wild Ox

The third species consists of those animals that are called the wild oxen. These are a little below the elephant in size and of the appearance, color, and shape of a bull. Their strength and speed are extraordinary and they spare neither man nor wild beast that they have seen. These (the Germans) catch in pits and kill eagerly. The youths become accustomed to this exercise and are trained to this particular kind of hunting. Those who have killed the greatest number of them, bring the horns with them to a public place to serve as evidence and thus earn high honor. These beasts cannot be domesticated and tamed, even if caught when very young. In size, shape, and appearance, their horns are quite different from the horns of our oxen. They (the natives) collect (acquire) these horns eagerly and bind (encircle) them with silver at the rim and use them as drinking cups at their most sumptuous feasts.



## **2. The War with the Helvetians**

Word was brought to Caesar that the Helvetians intended to march through the land of the Sequani and the Haedui into the territories of the Santones, which are not far from the borders of the Tolosates, a state (which is) in the Province. He perceived that, if this movement took place, it would be very dangerous for the Province to have warlike men, unfriendly to the Roman People, as neighbors to a district unprotected and very rich in grain. For these reasons he placed Titus Labienus, a staff-officer, in charge of the entrenchments which he had constructed; he himself hastened to Italy by rapid stages, raised two legions there, withdrew from winter quarters three that were wintering around Aquileia, and with these five legions made speed to march by the shortest route of Farther Gaul over the Alps.

### **Three Gallic States Appeal to Caesar against the Helvetians**

By this time the Helvetians had brought their own forces through the defiles and the country of the Sequani, had reached the territories of the Haedui, and were laying waste their lands. Since they could not defend themselves and their possessions from the invaders, the Haedui sent envoys to Caesar to ask for aid. At the same time the Ambarri, close allies and kinsmen of the Haedui, informed Caesar that, with their lands laid waste, they could not easily safeguard their towns from the violence of the enemy. The Allobroges also, who possessed villages and property on the farther side of the Rhone, fled to Caesar, affirming that they had nothing left save the bare ground. These complaints drove Caesar to the decision that he ought not wait till the Helvetians, having destroyed all the possessions of Rome's allies, should arrive in the lands of the Santones.

### **Caesar Attacks the Divided Forces of the Helvetians and Defeats the Rearguard**

There is a river named the Arar (Saône), which flows between the borders of the Haedui and the Sequani into the Rhone, with remarkably slow current, so that the eye cannot determine in which direction it flows. This river the Helvetians proceeded to cross by rafts and boats fastened together. When Caesar was informed through scouts that the Helvetians had already taken three-quarters of their forces across this river and that about a quarter remained on the near side of the River Arar, he left camp with three legions just after the beginning of the third watch and came up to that division which had not yet crossed. He attacked them off guard, while their movements were hampered, and cut down a great part of them. The rest took to flight and concealed themselves in the nearest woods. This canton was called the Tigurini, for the whole state of Helvetia is divided into four cantons. In the recollection of our fathers this canton, after

marching out alone from its homeland, had slain the consul Lucius Cassius and sent his army under the yoke. And so, whether by accident or by the purpose of the immortal gods, that part of the Helvetian state which had brought so conspicuous a calamity upon the Roman People was the first to pay the penalty in full.

#### **Caesar Bridges the Arar; the Helvetians Send a Deputation**

After fighting this action, so that he might be able to pursue the rest of the Helvetian forces, he had a bridge built over the Arar and took his army across by it. Alarmed by his sudden approach—for they perceived that he had done in one day that which they themselves had accomplished with the greatest difficulty in twenty days, (namely) crossing the river—the Helvetians sent envoys to him. The leader of the deputation was Divico, who had been commander of the Helvetians in the campaign against Cassius.

He dealt with Caesar as follows: "If the Roman People will make peace with the Helvetians, they will go and remain wherever you determine and desire them to be. But if you continue to harass them in war, remember both the earlier disaster of the Roman People and the ancient valor of the Helvetians. As to the fact that you attacked one canton unaware when those who had crossed the river could not bring assistance to their comrades, do not, on that account, rate your own valor highly or despise us. We have been so taught by our fathers and ancestors that we fight our battles with courage rather than rely on trickery or ambush. Therefore do not be guilty of causing this place where we have taken our stand to become famed and remembered for a disaster to the Roman People and the destruction (massacre) of a Roman army."

#### **Caesar Protests but Offers Terms; the Helvetians Haughtily Reject his Offer**

To these envoys Caesar replied as follow: "I feel the less hesitation because I remember well the events which you have mentioned. But if I should be willing to forget an old insult, can I also banish the memory of recent outrages—the fact that you tried to force a passage through the Province against my will, that you harassed the Haedui, the Ambarri, and the Allobroges? The fact that you boast so insolently of your own victory and that you wonder that you have carried on your outrages so long unpunished tend to the same result, for the immortal gods are accustomed to grant sometimes greater prosperity and quite long exemption from punishment to men whom they wish to punish for their wickedness, in order that they may suffer more severely from the change in their circumstances.

"Yet, although this is so, I will make peace with you, if you will give me hostages, so that I may know you will fulfill your promises, and if you will

make reparation to the Haedui for the wrongs which you have done to them and their allies, and likewise to the Allobroges."

Divico replied: "The Helvetians have been so trained by their ancestors that they are accustomed to receive, not to give, hostages; the Roman People is witness to this fact." With this reply he departed.

#### A Cavalry Skirmish. The Helvetians Move on, Followed by Caesar

The next day the Helvetians moved their camp from that spot. Caesar did likewise, sending forward the whole of his cavalry, four thousand in number, which he had collected from the whole Province, from the Haedui and their allies, to observe in what direction the enemy were marching. But the cavalry, following up the rearguard too eagerly, engaged in a combat on unfavorable ground with the cavalry of the Helvetians, and a few of our men fell. Elated by this engagement, because with five hundred horsemen they had repulsed so large a force of our cavalry, the Helvetians began on occasion to make a bolder stand, and with their rearguard to provoke our men to a fight. Caesar kept his troops from fighting and considered it sufficient for the present to prevent the enemy from plundering, foraging and carrying out raids. For about fifteen days they marched in such a way that there was an interval of no more than five or six miles each day between the rearguard of the enemy and the vanguard of the Romans.

#### The Haedui Fail to Cooperate with Caesar; He Complains to their Chiefs

Meanwhile Caesar was daily demanding from the Haedui the grain which he said they had promised in the name of their government. For because of the cold climate (since Gaul lies toward the north) not only were the standing crops not ripe in the fields, but there was not even a sufficient supply of fodder at hand; and he was not very well able to use the grain which he had brought up (by way of) the Arar in boats, because the Helvetians had diverted their march from the Arar, and he was unwilling to move away from them. The Haedui kept putting him off day after day, saying that the grain was being collected, was being brought in, was at hand.

He perceived that he was being put off too long and that the day was near on which he had to distribute grain (issue rations of grain) to the troops; accordingly he assembled their leading men, of whom he had a large number in camp, among them Diviciacus and Liscus: Liscus held the highest office (in the state). Caesar called them severely to account because, as he said, he was not helped by them in so urgent a crisis, with the enemy so near at hand, when grain could neither be purchased nor taken from the fields; and especially as he had undertaken the campaign largely in compliance with their entreaties, he complained much more bitterly of their desertion of him.

### Liscus Explains that Certain Haedui are Working against Caesar

Then at length the remarks of Caesar induced Liscus to reveal a fact that he had concealed before. "There are," he said, "some few men who have great influence with the masses, who are more powerful in their private capacity than the actual magistrates. These men by seditious and violent language are preventing the people from furnishing their due quota of grain, saying that it is better (for the Haedui), if they cannot for the moment win supremacy over Gaul, to submit to the commands of Gauls rather than Romans and declaring they do not doubt that, if the Romans overcome the Helvetians, they intend to deprive the Haedui of their freedom, in common with the rest of Gaul. These men are keeping the enemy informed of the Roman plans and of all that is going on in the camp. I have not the power to restrain them. Moreover, as to the fact that I have made this disclosure to you only under sheer force of necessity, I know at what risk I have done so; and for that reason I have kept silent as long as I have been able."

### Liscus Explains the Power of Dumnorix and his Interest in the Helvetians

Caesar felt that Dumnorix, the brother of Diviciacus, was indicated in these remarks of Liscus; but because he did not wish these matters discussed with too many present, he speedily dismissed the meeting but detained Liscus. He questioned him in private about what he had said in the meeting. Liscus now spoke with greater freedom and boldness. Caesar questioned others separately upon the same matters and learned that the true facts were (as follows): that the person referred to was Dumnorix, a man of boundless audacity, extremely popular with the masses because of his open-handedness, and a man eager for revolution. For several years he had bought in at a low price the customs duties and all the other revenues of the Haedui, because when he made a bid no one dared to bid against him. By this means he had both increased his private property and had acquired ample resources for bribery; he maintained a considerable body of horsemen permanently at his own expense and kept them about him; and not only in his own state but even in neighboring states he possessed great influence; and to strengthen this influence he had given his mother in marriage to the noblest and most powerful man among the Bituriges, and had himself taken a wife from the Helvetians. If anything should happen to the Romans he was most optimistic (came into the highest hope) that, by the aid of the Helvetians, he would secure the throne; whereas, under the rule of the Romans, he despaired not only of the kingship but even of the influence he now possessed.

Caesar discovered also, in the course of his inquiries as to the unsuccessful cavalry engagement which had taken place a few days before, that

Dumnorix and his horsemen (for he was the commander of the cavalry which the Haedui had sent to Caesar's aid) had set the example of flight, and that by their flight the rest of the cavalry had been stricken with panic.

#### **Caesar Decides to Punish Dumnorix but is Reluctant to Offend Diviciacus**

All this Caesar learned, and undeniable facts were added to confirm these suspicions: Dumnorix had led the Helvetians through the borders of the Sequani; he had arranged for an exchange of hostages; he had done all this not only without Caesar's orders and those of the state, but even without the knowledge of Caesar and the Haedui; he was now accused by the chief magistrate of the Haedui. Caesar thought that there were good grounds for him either to punish Dumnorix himself or to order his state to do so.

There was one objection to this course: Caesar had come to realize the very high regard which Diviciacus, the brother (of Dumnorix), had for the Romans, his very great good-will toward himself (Caesar), his exceptional loyalty, justice and good sense; (for) he was afraid of offending Diviciacus' feelings by the punishment of Dumnorix. Therefore, before he should take any definite step, Caesar ordered Diviciacus to be summoned to his quarters, and, having removed the regular interpreters, he conversed with him through Gaius Valerius Troucillus, a leading man in the Province of Gaul and his own intimate friend, in whom he had the utmost confidence in all matters. At the same time Caesar related the remarks which had been made in the presence of Diviciacus concerning Dumnorix in the council of the Gauls and showed what each person had said separately to Caesar (in Caesar's presence) about Dumnorix. Caesar asked and urged that without offense to the feelings of Diviciacus he (Caesar) might either himself investigate the case and pass judgment upon Dumnorix or order the state to do so.

#### **Diviciacus Pleads for his Brother's Life; Caesar Pardons Dumnorix**

With many tears Diviciacus embraced Caesar and began to implore him not to take too severe measures against his brother. "I know," he said, "that what you say is true, and no one is more pained at this situation than I am. For all that, I feel the force of brotherly love and public opinion. But if you do anything too harsh to him, no one, since I hold such a position in your friendship, will think that it has been done without my consent; as a result of this the feelings of all Gaul will turn from me."

While Diviciacus was asking this of Caesar at greater length and with tears, Caesar grasped him by the hand and consoled him, asking him to end



his entreaty and assuring him that his influence with him (Caesar) was of such value that he excused the injury to the state and his own vexation out of consideration for the good-will and entreaties of Diviciacus.

Then he summoned Dumnorix to his quarters and invited the presence of his brother; he pointed out what he blamed in him, stated what he knew about him and the complaints which the state brought against him, warned him to avoid all grounds of suspicion for the future, and told him that he was overlooking the past for his brother Diviciacus' sake. He set agents to keep an eye on Dumnorix that he might know what he did and with whom he spoke.

### Caesar Plans to Surprise the Helvetians

On the same day he was informed by scouts that the enemy had halted at the foot of a mountain eight miles from his camp. Thereupon Caesar sent men to find out the character of the mountain and what sort of ascent there was all around. The report was that the ascent was easy. Caesar ordered Titus Labienus, a staff-officer, with two legions and with those men as guides who knew the route, to climb the topmost ridge of the mountain just after the beginning of the third watch; and he showed him what was involved in his plan. He himself, just after the beginning of the fourth watch, marched speedily against the enemy by the same route which the enemy had taken, sending all the cavalry ahead of him. Publius Considius, who was considered highly skilled in the art of warfare and who had served in the army of Lucius Sulla and later in that of Marcus Crassus, was sent forward with the scouts.

### The Plan Fails through the Mistake of Considius

At dawn Labienus was in possession of the top of the mountain, and Caesar himself was no more than a mile and a half from the enemy's camp; and, as he afterward learned from prisoners, neither his own approach nor that of Labienus had been discovered. At this moment Considius rode up to him at full gallop, saying that the mountain which he had wished Labienus to seize was in possession of the enemy, that he knew this by the Gallic arms and decorations. Caesar withdrew his own troops to the nearest hill and formed his battle line.

Labienus had been instructed by Caesar not to begin battle unless his (Caesar's) troops were seen near the enemy's camp, so that a simultaneous attack might be made upon the enemy from all sides; accordingly, having seized the height, he was awaiting our men and refraining from battle. Finally, late in the day, Caesar learned through his scouts that the mountain was in the possession of his own men, that the Helvetians had moved their camp, and that Considius, panic-stricken, had reported to

him as having seen that which he had not seen. On that day he followed the enemy at the customary interval and pitched camp three miles from their camp.

#### **Caesar Marches for Bibracte to Secure Supplies; the Helvetians Follow**

On the following day, as two days in all remained before the time when grain had to be issued (before it was necessary to issue the grain-ration) to the army and as he was no more than eighteen miles from Bibracte, by far the largest and wealthiest town of the Haedui, he considered that provision should be made for supplies. He therefore turned his line of march away from the Helvetians and marched rapidly for Bibracte. The change was reported to the enemy by some deserters from Lucius Aemilius, a decurion of the Gallic cavalry. The Helvetians either thought that the Romans were moving away from them because of sheer panic (the more so because on the day before, although the Romans had seized the higher ground, they had not begun battle), or they were confident that the Romans could be cut off from their grain-supply. Therefore the Helvetians changed their tactics, altered their direction, and began to follow and harass the Roman rearguard.

#### **Both Sides Prepare for Battle; the Helvetians Attack**

As soon as he observed this (maneuver), Caesar withdrew his troops to the nearest hill and sent his cavalry to check the enemy's charge. Meanwhile he himself drew up his four veteran legions in triple line half-way up the hill; but he ordered the two legions which he had last enrolled in Nearer Gaul and all the auxiliary troops to be posted on the top of the ridge, and the whole hill-side to be filled with men; he ordered the men's packs in the meantime to be collected in one place and that place to be fortified by the troops who were stationed in line on the higher ground. The Helvetians followed with all their carts and collected their baggage in one place; the fighting men, in a closely packed line, repulsed our cavalry, then formed a phalanx and moved up against our first line.

#### **The Helvetians Retire**

Caesar first removed his own horse from sight, then the horses of all his officers, so that he might take away any hope of flight by equalizing the danger of all; then he encouraged his troops and began battle. The soldiers, from the upper ground, threw their javelins and easily broke through the phalanx of the enemy; and, when it was scattered, they drew their swords and charged. The Gauls were greatly hampered in action by the fact that in several cases their shields were pierced and pinned together by the blow of a single javelin, and, since the iron had

been bent, they could not pull the javelins out or fight to much advantage with their left arms encumbered. As a result many of them preferred, after shaking their arms about for some time, to cast off the shield and so to fight with no body protection. At length, worn out with wounds, they began to retreat and, as a hill was about a mile away, to retire to it.

#### **The Romans Follow; Allies of the Helvetians Arrive; a Double Battle Develops**

They gained the heights, and, with our men approaching, the Boii and the Tulingi, who with some 15,000 men were bringing up the rear of the enemy and forming the rearguard, marched up, immediately attacked the Romans on their exposed flank, and surrounded them. Seeing this (maneuver), the Helvetians who had retired to the hill began to press again and to renew the fight. The Romans wheeled and charged in two divisions: the first and second line to oppose the part of the enemy which had been defeated and driven off, the third to hold off the newcomers.

#### **The Helvetians, Defeated, Retreat; Caesar Follows**

Thus in a battle on two fronts the fighting was fierce and long. When the enemy could no longer hold out against our attacks, the one body (the Helvetians) drew back to the hill, as they had begun to do, the other (the Boii and the Tulingi) withdrew to their baggage and carts—(withdrew, not fled), for in the course of this whole battle, although it lasted from the seventh hour to evening, no one could see an enemy turned in flight (the back of an enemy). Even by the baggage the fighting continued far into the night, for the enemy had made a rampart of their wagons (had placed their wagons in front as a rampart) and, from their commanding position, kept hurling missiles upon our advancing lines, while some between the carts and wagons kept discharging lances and javelins, wounding our men. However, after a long fight, our troops gained possession of the baggage and the camp. There the daughter of Orgetorix and one of his sons were taken prisoner.

About 130,000 persons survived the action and marched continuously during that whole night; the march was not interrupted for any part of the night, and three days later they reached the territories of the Lingones, for our troops had not been able to pursue them, having halted for three days to attend to the wounded soldiers and to bury the slain. Caesar sent dispatches and messages to the Lingones (telling them) not to assist the fugitives with grain or other supplies, (and threatening that) if they did give help, he would treat them in the same way as the Helvetians. He himself, after three days had elapsed, began to follow them with all his forces.

### **The Survivors Surrender; Six Thousand Escape Temporarily**

The Helvetians were compelled by the lack of all provisions to send envoys to him to negotiate (concerning) a surrender. When these met him on the march, they threw themselves at his feet, and, as suppliants with tears, they sought peace. When Caesar ordered them to await his arrival where they then were, they obeyed. Upon his arrival there Caesar demanded the surrender of hostages and arms and of the slaves who had deserted to them. While these were being sought out and collected, night intervened; and about 6,000 men of the canton called Verbigenus left the Helvetian encampment in the early part of the night and pushed on for the Rhine and the territory of the Germans. Either they were afraid that, after surrendering their arms, they would be punished, or they were tempted by the hope of escape, thinking that in so vast a crowd of prisoners their own flight could either be concealed or remain entirely unnoticed.

When Caesar discovered this (escape), he ordered the peoples through whose territories they had marched to seek them out and bring them back if they wished to be guiltless in his eyes. Those who were brought back he treated as enemies; but, after they had delivered up hostages, arms and deserters, he accepted all the rest in surrender.

### **The Helvetians are Ordered to Return to their Lands**

He ordered the Helvetians to return to their own lands from which they had set out; and, as they had lost all their produce and had no means at home of sustaining hunger, he ordered the Allobroges to supply them with grain; he also ordered the Helvetians and their allies to restore with their own hands the towns and villages which they had burned.

His chief reason for doing so was that he did not wish the district which the Helvetians had left (to lie) uninhabited, lest the Germans who dwell on the farther side of the Rhine might cross over because of the fertility of the land from their own into the Helvetian territory and become neighbors of the Province of Gaul and especially of the Allobroges.

### **The Number of Helvetians and their Allies**

In the camp of the Helvetians were found lists (records) written out in Greek characters; these were brought to Caesar. In these records was drawn up an account name by name showing the number of those who could bear arms who had gone out from their homeland, and also separately how many children, old men and women. The grand total was about 368,000. Of those who returned home an enumeration was made in accordance with Caesar's orders, and the number was found to be 110,000.

### **3. Caesar's First Expedition to Britain, 55 B.C.**

#### **Caesar Decides to Invade Britain**

Although only a small part of summer remained and although winter comes early in these regions, as all Gaul has a northerly trend, Caesar nevertheless hastened to set out for Britain, because he knew that in almost all the wars with the Gauls, reinforcements had been furnished to our enemy from that country. Besides, even if the time of year should be insufficient for carrying on the war, nevertheless he thought it would be of great service to him if he only visited the island, learned the character of the people, and became familiar with their localities, harbors, and landing places, which were, for the most part, unknown to the Gauls. For no one, except merchants, goes to that place with any regularity and nothing is known even to them except the seacoast and the parts opposite Gaul. Therefore, although he summoned to him traders from all directions, he could learn neither what was the size of the island, nor what tribes inhabited it, nor how numerous (they were), nor what experience they had in war, nor what customs they used, nor what harbors were convenient for a great number of larger ships.

#### **Reconnaissance; British Envoys Arrive**

Before making the attempt, he sent Gaius Volusenus ahead in a warship to acquire a knowledge of these particulars, as he considered him to be a competent person. He commissioned him to examine everything thoroughly and then to return to him as soon as possible. He himself set out for the country of the Morini with all his forces because from their coast was the shortest passage into Britain. He ordered ships from all parts of the neighboring districts, and the fleet that he had built the preceding summer for the war with (against) the Veneti, to assemble at this place.

In the meantime, his purpose having been discovered and reported to the Britons by merchants, ambassadors came to him from several states of the island to promise that they would give hostages and submit to the authority of the Roman people. Having given them an audience and made liberal promises, he advised them to continue in that purpose and sent them back to their own country together with Commius, whom, upon subduing the Atrebates, he had established as king there, a man whose courage and judgment he esteemed, who he thought would be faithful to him and whose influence in those countries was held in high esteem. He ordered him to visit as many states as he could and to persuade them to accept the protection of the Roman people and to inform them that he (Caesar) would shortly come there. Volusenus, having reconnoitered the entire region, returned to Caesar on the fifth day, and reported what he had observed there.



While Caesar remained in these parts for the purpose of preparing ships, ambassadors came to him from a great portion of the Morini to plead their excuse for their conduct of the season before on the grounds that being uncivilized and unacquainted with our custom, they had made war upon the Roman people, and to promise to perform what he should command. Thinking that this had happened most opportunely for him as he did not wish to leave an enemy behind him and did not have the opportunity to carry on a war because of the time of year, Caesar imposed upon them a large number of hostages and when these were brought, admitted them to terms.

Having collected about eighty transport ships, a number which he thought sufficient for carrying two legions over, he assigned what galleys he had besides to the quaestor, his staff officers, and auxiliary officers. To this number were added eighteen transports which were being held by the winds at a distance of eight miles from that place. These he distributed among the cavalry; the rest of the army he delivered to Quintus Titurius Sabinus and Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta, his staff officers, to lead into the territories of the Menapii and into those cantons of the Morini from which ambassadors had not come to him. He ordered Publius Sulpicius Rufus, his staff officer, to hold the harbor, with such a garrison as he thought sufficient.

#### The Crossing of the Channel; Landing Preparations

These matters being arranged, and finding the weather favorable for his voyage, he set sail about the third watch, and ordered the cavalry to march forward to the farther port, to embark there, and to follow him. He himself reached Britain with the first ships, about the fourth hour of the day, and there saw the armed forces of the enemy drawn up on all the hills. The nature of the place was as follows: the sea was bounded by mountains so close to it that a javelin could be thrown from the ground above to the shore. Considering this by no means a fit place for disembarking, he remained at anchor until the ninth hour, until the other ships should assemble there.

Having in the meantime assembled the staff officers and military tribunes, he told them both what he had learned from Volusenus, and what he wished to be done, and enjoined them to perform everything at the word of command and at the (proper) moment. He dismissed them, and meeting with favorable wind and tide at the same time, he gave the signal and weighed anchor: then advancing about seven miles from that place, he stationed his fleet near an open and level shore.

### The Britons Try to Prevent the Landing

But the natives, seeing the plan of the Romans, sent forward their cavalry and charioteers, and following with the rest of their forces, endeavored to prevent our men from landing. There was, for the following reasons, very great difficulty, because our ships, on account of their great size, could not be moored except in deep water, and the soldiers, in places unknown to them, oppressed with a large and heavy weight of armor, and with their hands full, had at the same time to leap from the ships, stand amid the waves, and encounter the enemy; whereas the enemy either on dry ground, or advancing a little way into the water, free in all their limbs, in places thoroughly familiar, could confidently throw their weapons and spur on their horses, which were accustomed (to this kind of service). Dismayed by these circumstances and altogether untrained in this mode of battle, our men did not exert the same vigor and eagerness which they had been accustomed to display in battles on land.

### The Romans Force a Landing; a Centurion Leads the Way

When Caesar observed this, he ordered the ships of war, the appearance of which was less familiar to the barbarians, to be withdrawn a little from the transport vessels, rowed full speed ahead, and stationed toward the open flank of the enemy, whereupon the enemy were to be beaten off and driven away with slings, arrows, and artillery; this maneuver was of great service to our men, for the barbarians, startled by the form of our ships, the motions of our oars, and the nature of our artillery, which was strange to them, stopped and retreated, but only a little. And while our men were hesitating, chiefly because of the depth of the sea, the man who carried the standard of the tenth legion, after imploring the gods that the matter might turn out favorably for the legion, shouted, "Leap down, fellow soldiers, unless you wish to betray your eagle to the enemy. I, for my part, shall be found to have done my duty to my country and to my general." When he had said this in a loud voice, he leaped from the ship and proceeded to bear the eagle toward the enemy. Then our men, encouraging one another not to incur so great a disgrace, all leaped from the ship. Likewise, when those who were in the nearest ships saw them, they speedily followed and approached the enemy.

### The Britons are Routed

The battle was vigorously fought on both sides. However, as they could neither keep their ranks, get a firm footing, nor follow their standards, and as men from different ships rallied around whatever stand-

ards they met, our men were thrown into great confusion. The enemy were acquainted with all the shoals, and whenever they saw from the shore small parties disembarking one by one, they spurred their horses and attacked them while they were in difficulties. Many (of the enemy) surrounded a few (of our men), while others threw their weapons into a whole party from the exposed flank. When Caesar observed this, he ordered the small boats of the warships and the scouting vessels to be filled with soldiers, and kept sending them up to the aid of those whom he had observed in distress. As soon as our men got good footing on dry ground, followed by all their comrades, they made an attack upon the enemy and put them to flight, but could not pursue them any great distance because the cavalry had not been able to maintain their course (at sea) and reach the island. This alone was lacking to complete Caesar's usual good fortune.

### The Britons Sue for Peace

As soon as they recovered from their flight, the enemy, being thus vanquished in battle, instantly sent ambassadors to Caesar to negotiate about peace. They promised to give hostages and to perform what he should require. Together with these ambassadors came Commius the Atrebatian, who, as was said above, had been sent into Britain by Caesar. They had seized him when he left his ship, although as an ambassador he bore Caesar's commission to them, and had thrown him into chains. Now, after the battle, they sent him back, and in suing for peace cast the blame of that act upon the common people, and entreated that they might be pardoned on account of their indiscretion. Complaining that they had made war without a reason, though they had sought peace and had of their own accord sent ambassadors to the continent for that purpose, Caesar said that he would pardon their indiscretion, and required hostages, a part of whom they gave immediately; they said they would give the remainder in a few days. In the meantime they ordered their people to move back to the country districts while the leading men began to assemble from all quarters and to surrender themselves and their tribes to Caesar.

### The Cavalry Transports are Dispersed by a Storm

When peace had been established by these means, three days after Britain was reached, the eighteen ships, to which reference has been made above and which had taken on board the cavalry, set sail from the upper port with a gentle wind. However, as (when) they were approaching Britain and were seen from the camp, such a great storm suddenly arose that none of them could maintain its course; some were

driven back to the same port from which they had started, while others, to their great danger, were driven to the lower part of the island, toward the west; nevertheless, the ships cast anchor, but when (since) they began to fill, they were forced to put out in the face of the night and make for the continent.

### Many Ships are Wrecked off the British Coast

It happened that night to be full moon, a time which usually causes very high tides in that ocean, and that circumstance was unknown to our men. Thus at one (and the same) time the warships in which Caesar had transported his army and which he had beached, were being filled by the tide, and the transports which were riding at anchor were being dashed by the storm and no opportunity was afforded our men either to manage the ships or to go to their assistance (lend help). As several ships were wrecked, and as the rest, having lost their cables, anchors, and other rigging, were unfit for sailing, a great panic arose throughout the army, for there were no other ships in which they (the men) could be conveyed back, and all the things necessary for repairing ships were lacking, while grain for the winter had not been provided in those places, for it was generally agreed that they ought to pass the winter in Gaul.

### The Britons Plan to Renew the War

On discovering these things (On learning of this disaster), the leading men of Britain, who had come to Caesar after the battle, conferred among themselves. When they learned that cavalry, ships, and grain were lacking to the Romans, and discovered the limited number of our soldiers from the smallness of the camp, they thought that the best course to follow was to renew the war, cut our men off from grain and provisions, and prolong the campaign into the winter. For they were confident, that, if these were vanquished or cut off from a return (returning), no one would afterward cross over into Britain to make war. Therefore, they began to depart from the camp by degrees and secretly to bring up their people from the country districts.

### Caesar Repairs his Fleet

But although he had not yet discovered their plan, nevertheless, because of the disaster to his ships, and from the fact that they had ceased to give hostages, Caesar was beginning to suspect that that would happen which actually did. Therefore, he made provision to meet all emergencies, by bringing grain from the country districts daily into the camp, using the timber and brass of such ships as were most seriously damaged for

repairing the rest, and ordering whatever else was necessary for this purpose to be brought to him from the continent. And thus, since this task was executed by the soldiers with the greatest energy, in spite of the loss of twelve ships, he was able to sail reasonably well.

#### The Britons Attack a Foraging Party

While these things (repairs) were taking place, one legion, namely the seventh, had been sent to forage, according to custom. No suspicion of war had arisen as yet since some of the people remained in the country districts, while others kept coming back and forth to the camp. But now those who were on duty at the gates of the camp reported to Caesar that a heavier cloud of dust than usual was visible in the direction in which the legion had marched. Suspecting what was actually the case, that some fresh design had been adopted by the natives, Caesar ordered the cohorts that were on duty to march in that direction with him, and two other cohorts to relieve them on duty; the rest were to arm themselves and to follow him immediately. When he had advanced some little distance from the camp, he saw that his men were hard pressed by the enemy, and were scarcely able to stand their ground, and, as the legion was crowded together, weapons were being cast on them from all sides. For as all the grain had been reaped from the rest of the neighborhood with the exception of one part, the enemy, suspecting that our men would go there, had hidden in the woods during the night. Then attacking our men suddenly, scattered as they were when they had laid aside their arms and were engaged in reaping, they had killed a small number, had thrown into confusion the rest, whose ranks were unformed, and at the same time had surrounded them with cavalry and chariots.

#### The Britons' Method of Chariot Fighting

Their mode of fighting with their chariots is as follows: first, they ride about in all directions and throw their weapons and generally break the enemy's ranks with the very dread of their horses and with the noise of their wheels, and whenever they have worked themselves in between the troops of cavalry, they leap from their chariots and fight on foot. The charioteers in the meantime withdraw gradually from the battle and so station their chariots that, if their fighting men are overpowered by the number of the enemy, they may have a ready retreat to their own troops. Thus they display in battle the mobility of cavalry together with the steadiness of infantry, and by daily practice and exercise attain to such expertness that they are accustomed on sloping and even steep ground, to check their horses at the gallop, and to guide and turn them in an instant, to run along the pole and stand on the yoke, and from there to return at top speed to their chariots again.



### Caesar Rescues the Seventh Legion.

Caesar brought assistance in the nick of time to our men who were dismayed by these tactics; for, upon his arrival, the enemy paused and our men recovered from their fear. In spite of this, thinking the time unfavorable for provoking the enemy and coming to an action, he kept himself on his own ground, and after a short interval, withdrew the legions to the camp. While this was going on and all our men were engaged, the rest of the Britons who were in the fields departed. Storms, severe enough to keep our men in camp and to prevent the enemy from attacking us, followed for several successive days.

### The Britons Assemble for a Final Effort

In the meantime, the barbarians dispatched messengers in all directions and reported to their people the small number of our soldiers and pointed out how good an opportunity was given of obtaining plunder and of freeing themselves forever if they should only drive the Romans from their camp. Having by these means speedily assembled a large force of infantry and cavalry, they came up to the camp.

### The Britons are Defeated

Although Caesar anticipated that the same thing which had happened on former occasions would then occur—namely that if the enemy were routed, they would escape from danger by their speed—still, having obtained about thirty cavalry, which Commius the Atrebatian (of whom mention has already been made) had brought over with him, he drew up the legions in order of battle before the camp. When the action commenced, the enemy were unable to withstand the attack of our men for long and turned their backs. Our men pursued them as far as they were strong enough to run and killed several of them; then, having burned all their buildings far and wide, they returned to camp.

### Caesar Returns to Gaul

The same day, ambassadors sent by the enemy came to Caesar to negotiate for peace. For them, Caesar doubled the number of hostages which he had before demanded, and ordered that they should be brought over to the continent, because the time of the equinox was near, and he did not consider that, with his ships out of repair, the voyage ought to be exposed to wintry weather. Having found the weather favorable, he himself set sail a little after midnight, and all his fleet arrived safely at the continent, but two of the transports could not make the same harbors as the rest and were carried a little lower down.

## **4. The Revolt of the Nervii**

### **The Gauls Attack Cicero's Camp**

Accordingly, messengers were immediately dispatched to the Ceutrones, to the Grudii, and to the Levaci, all of whom are under their sovereignty (under the sovereignty of the Nervii). Having assembled as large a force as they could, they (the Belgae) swooped down suddenly on the winter quarters of Cicero before news of Titurius' death had been brought to him. In his case too it happened, as was inevitable, that some soldiers, who had gone off into the woods to gather wood for the fortification, were intercepted by the sudden arrival of the cavalry. After trapping these, the Eburones, the Nervii, and the Aduatuci and the allies and dependents of all these, began to attack the legion. Our men quickly ran to arms and mounted the rampart. They withstood the attack that day with great difficulty since the enemy placed all their hope in speed of action, and felt assured that, if they won, they would be victorious ever after.

. . .

### **Cicero Refuses to Accept the Terms of the Nervii**

Then the leaders and chiefs of the Nervii, who had some claim to address Cicero and had friendly relations (grounds of friendship) with him, said that they wanted to confer with him. When permission was granted, they told the same tale that Ambiorix had related to Titurius; all Gaul was in arms; the Germans had passed the Rhine, and the winter quarters of Caesar and of the others were under attack. They also mentioned the death of Sabinus and pointed to Ambiorix to inspire credit (for their story). The Romans were mistaken, they said, if they hoped for any relief from those who were themselves in difficulty. Yet they were so disposed toward Cicero and the Romans that they refused them nothing except winter quarters and did not want this practice (of establishing winter quarters in their country) to become established; they might, as far as the Gauls were concerned, depart from their winter quarters safely and proceed without fear wherever they liked.

To these arguments, Cicero made but one reply: it was not the custom of the Roman people to accept terms from an armed enemy; if they were willing to lay down their arms, they might use his assistance and send ambassadors to Caesar.

### **The Nervii Besiege the Roman Camp**

Disappointed in this hope, the Nervii encircled the winter quarters with a rampart ten feet high and a ditch fifteen feet wide. These military works they had learned from their association (with us) in former years, and they were also instructed by some prisoners whom they had taken from our army. But, as they had no supply of iron tools suitable

for this purpose, they were forced to cut the turf with their swords and to carry away the earth with their hands and military cloaks. From this circumstance, their vast numbers could be inferred, for in less than three hours they completed a fortification of three miles in circumference, and on the days that followed, they began to construct towers (corresponding) to the height of the (Roman) rampart.

...

But so great was the courage of our soldiers, and such their presence of mind, that though they were scorched on all sides, harassed by a hail of missiles, and were aware that all their baggage and their possessions were burning, not only did no one abandon the rampart and withdraw, but scarcely any one even looked behind him, and they all fought with the greatest vigor and courage.

This was far the most disastrous day for our men. Nevertheless the result was that on that day a very large number of the enemy was wounded and slain. When the fire abated a little, a tower was moved up at one point and was already touching the rampart, when the centurions of the third cohort stepped back from the place in which they were standing, and withdrew all their men. They began to challenge the enemy by signs and shouts to enter if they wished, but none of them dared to advance. They were then dislodged by showers of stones from every direction and their tower was set on fire.

### The Rival Centurions

In this legion there were two very brave men, centurions, so brave indeed that they were nearing promotion to first rank, Titus Pullo and Lucius Vorenus. These two used to have continual disputes with each other as to which was the better man, and year after year they used to contend for promotion with the keenest competition (rivalry). When the fight was going on most vigorously before the fortifications, Pullo cried, "Why do you hesitate, Vorenus? What (better) chance to prove your valor are you waiting for? This very day shall decide our disputes." When he had uttered these words, he advanced outside the fortifications and rushed on the part of the enemy which appeared the thickest. Vorenus did not, of course, remain within the rampart but, fearing what everyone would think, followed close after.

Then, at a moderate distance, Pullo threw his javelin at the enemy and pierced one of the multitude who was running up, and as the stricken man lay unconscious, the enemy covered him with their shields and all threw their weapons at his opponent, giving him no opportunity of retreating. Pullo, unfortunately, had his shield pierced and a javelin fastened in his sword-belt. This accident threw his scabbard out of place

and obstructed his right hand as he tried to draw his sword, and the enemy crowded around him while he was thus hampered. His rival, Vorenius, ran up to him and helped him in this emergency. Immediately the whole host turned from Pullo to him, supposing the other (Pullo) to be pierced through by the javelin. Vorenius fought with his sword at close quarters and having slain one man, drove the rest a little way back, but pressing on too eagerly, he stumbled into a hole and fell. To him, surrounded in turn, Pullo brought help, and both retreated into the fortifications with the greatest glory after killing a number of the enemy. In their bitter rivalry, fortune so shuttled them back and forth that each rival helped and saved the other, nor could it be determined which of the two was to be considered the better man in valor.

#### Cicero Tries to Inform Caesar of his Danger

The more serious and violent the siege became from day to day, the more frequent were the dispatches and messengers sent to Caesar; some of these messengers were taken and tortured to death in the sight of our soldiers. There was within our camp a single Nervian, named Vertico, a man of good family, who at the beginning of the siege had fled to Cicero for refuge and had shown himself faithful to him. He persuaded his slave, by the hope of freedom and great rewards, to convey a letter to Caesar. This he (the slave) carried out bound to his javelin and, being a Gaul, he moved about among the Gauls without any suspicion and reached Caesar. From him information was received of the perils that threatened Cicero and the legion.

...

#### Caesar Sends a Dispatch to Cicero

Caesar approved of his decision. Although he was disappointed in his expectation of (having) three legions and had been reduced to two, he placed his one and only hope of the common safety in speed. He entered the territories of the Nervii by forced marches. There he learned from some prisoners what was going on in Cicero's camp, and in what great danger matters stood. Then with great rewards he induced one of the Gallic cavalry to convey a letter to Cicero. This he sent written in Greek characters, so that if the letter were intercepted, our plans would not be discovered by the enemy. He directed him, if he should be unable to get into the camp, to throw his javelin with the letter fastened to the thong, inside the fortifications of the camp. He wrote in the letter that he had set out with his legions and would quickly be there and exhorted Cicero to maintain his old courage. The Gaul, apprehending danger, threw his javelin as he had been directed.

It happened to lodge in a tower and was not noticed by our men for two days: however on the third day it was seen by one of the soldiers,

taken down, and carried to Cicero. He read the letter over and then read it aloud to an assembly of the soldiers and filled all with the greatest joy. Then columns of smoke were seen in the distance, a circumstance which banished all doubt of the arrival of the legions.

. . .

#### Caesar Induces the Enemy to Attack him on his own Ground

That day, slight skirmishes of cavalry took place near the river. Both armies, however, kept their own positions: the Gauls, because they were awaiting larger forces which had not yet arrived; Caesar, with the intention of fighting on his side of the valley in front of his camp, if by pretending fear he could lure the enemy on to his own ground; if he could not accomplish this, that he might, after reconnoitering the roads, cross the valley and the stream with less risk. At daybreak the cavalry of the enemy approached the camp and joined battle with our cavalry. Caesar ordered the cavalry deliberately to give way and to retreat to the camp. At the same time, he ordered the men to fortify the camp with a higher rampart in all directions, to barricade the gates, and in executing these things (he ordered) that there should be as much running to and fro as possible and that the work should be done with a pretense of fear.

#### The Gauls are Routed

Lured on by all these tricks, the enemy led over their forces and drew up their line in a disadvantageous position. As our men had even been withdrawn from the rampart, they (the enemy) approached nearer, threw their weapons into the fortification from all sides, and, sending heralds around, ordered a proclamation to be made that if any one, (whether) Gaul or Roman, wanted to go over to them before the third hour, he might do so with safety; after that time there would be no chance. The gates were blocked up, though merely for show, with single rows of turfs. However the Gauls thought that they could not break in that way. Utterly contemptuous of us, some began to tear down the rampart with their hands, others to fill up the trenches. Then Caesar, making a sally from all the gates, and sending out the cavalry, soon put the enemy to flight, so that not a single man stood his ground to fight. He killed a great number of them (the enemy) and stripped all of their arms.

#### Caesar Joins Cicero, and Congratulates him on his Defense

Fearing to pursue them very far, because woods and marshes intervened, Caesar reached Cicero the same day with all his forces intact. He marveled at the towers which they had erected, the covering-sheds,



and the earthworks of the enemy. The legion was paraded before him and he found that not one soldier in ten had escaped unwounded. From all these things he realized the danger and the courage with which matters had been conducted; he commended Cicero for his services and also the legion; he addressed individually the centurions and the tribunes of the soldiers, whose valor, as he had learned on Cicero's authority, had been exceptional. He obtained more accurate information of the deaths of Sabinus and Cotta from the prisoners.

A parade (assembly) was held the following day, and he set forth all that had occurred, but consoled and encouraged the soldiers by suggesting that the loss, which had been occasioned by the blameworthy rashness of a general, should be borne with all the greater calmness because, by the favor of the immortal gods and their own valor, the loss had been wiped out, leaving to the enemy no lasting joy, to themselves no long-enduring grief.

. . .

## OID

### Atalanta

#### Fair the Reward; High the Stakes

You may, perhaps, have heard of a certain girl who surpassed swift-footed men in the contest of the race. And that was no idle tale, for she did surpass them. Nor could you have said whether she was more distinguished for the fame of her speed (*lit.* feet) or the charm of her beauty. Terrified by the oracle of the god, she lived unmarried in the shady woods, and with harsh terms she repelled the insistent throng of suitors. "I am not to be won (*lit.* obtained)," she said, "till I first be conquered in speed. Compete (*lit.* contest) in a race with me. Death (shall be) the reward of those who lag behind (*lit.* the sluggish). Let that be the condition of the race."

(Now) Hippomenes had taken his seat as a spectator of this ill-matched race, and had exclaimed: "Who seeks a wife at such peril to himself?" and he had condemned the young men for their headstrong love. But when he saw her face, and when she had laid aside her outer robe (cloak) and he beheld her figure, he was amazed and, stretching out his hands, he cried: "Forgive me, you whom I just now blamed. I did not yet realize the inducement (*lit.* the prize)."

While the stranger noticed all this, the last lap of the race was run (*lit.* the last goal was run down), and Atalanta was crowned victor with a festal wreath. With groans the conquered youths paid the penalty according to the contract.

#### Hippomenes Will Face the Risk

Not deterred by the fate of these (men), however, Hippomenes stood forth and, fixing his eyes (gaze) upon the girl, said: "Why do you seek an easily won renown by conquering sluggish (youths)? Come, strive with me! If fortune gives me the victory (*lit.* If fortune shall have made me the winner), you will not think it a disgrace to be overcome by so

great (a foe) (by one so important); for Megareus of Onchestus is my father and his grandfather is Neptune; (hence) I am the great-grandson of the king of the waters, nor is my manly worth inferior to my noble birth. Or, if I am (*lit.* shall be) defeated, you will have a great and memorable name for the conquest of Hippomenes.”

### To Win or to Lose?

As he said this, the daughter of Schoeneus gazed on him with softening eyes, doubtful whether she preferred to win or to be won. And thus she spoke, “What god, hostile to handsome men, wishes to destroy this one, and prompts him to seek marriage with me at the risk of his own dear life? I am not worth so great a price, if I am the judge.”

### Hippomenes Prays to Venus

Now the people and her father were demanding the accustomed race, when the youth descended from Neptune (*lit.* the Neptunian youth), Hippomenes, called on me with suppliant voice and said, “O may Cytherea (Venus) be near, I pray, and assist the bold deed I dare and smile upon the fire of love which she has given.” A kindly breeze bore this agreeable prayer to me and I confess it moved my heart. And there was but little time to give him aid. There is a field, the natives call it the field of Tamasus, the richest portion of the Cyprian land, which in ancient times men consecrated to me and bade this gift to be added to my temples. Within this field, there gleams a tree with golden leaves, and its branches crackle with the same bright gold. Having just come from there, I chanced to have in my hand three golden apples that I had plucked off. Invisible to all save him, I approached Hippomenes and showed him how to use the apples.

### The First Apple

The trumpets had sounded for the race, when they both, crouching low, flashed forth from the barrier and skimmed over the surface of the sand with flying feet. Shouts of applause and the words of those who cried to him lent (added) encouragement to the young man: “Now, now is the time to exert yourself, Hippomenes! Go on! Now use your utmost strength! Put aside delay! You’re sure to win! (You will win!)” It is doubtful whether the heroic son of Megareus or the daughter of Schoeneus took more joy of these words.

Oh, how often, when she could have passed him, did she delay and, after gazing long upon his face, reluctantly leave him behind! And now, dry, panting breath came from his weary throat and the goal was still far away. Then at length Neptune’s scion threw one of the three golden

apples (*lit.* fruits of the tree). The maid was astounded and, in her eager desire for the shining fruit, she turned aside from her course and picked up the rolling golden thing. Hippomenes passed her; the spectators roared their applause.

### The Second Apple

Putting on a spurt, she made up for her delay and for the waste of time (the time lost through the delay) and again left the youth behind her. Again she delayed at the throwing of the second apple, followed, and passed the man.

### The Third Apple

The last part of the course remained. "Be present now to help me, goddess, giver of my gift!" he said, and he threw the shining gold with all his youthful strength sideways into a corner of the field from which she would lose much time in returning (*lit.* in order that she might return more slowly). The girl seemed to hesitate whether she should go after it. I forced her to take it up, and added weight to the apple she picked up, and so impeded her equally with the weight of the burden and with her loss of time. And, lest my story be longer than the race itself, the maiden was outstripped; the victor led away (married) his prize.

## Niobe

### The Defiant Queen

Alas, how different was this Niobe from that Niobe who only now had driven (had scattered) the people from Latona's altars and had walked proudly through the center of the city, an object of envy to her friends. Now she was an object of pity, even to her enemies. She threw herself upon the cold bodies (of her sons) and distractedly kissed them all a last farewell. From them she lifted her arms blackened with bruises to heaven and cried: "Feed, cruel Latona, upon my grief, glut your bloodthirsty heart; I die seven deaths (I have died seven deaths in the deaths of my sons). Exult, and triumph in your hateful victory. But why do I call you victor? Wretched though I am, I have (still) more left to me than you have in your good fortune. Even after losing so many, I (still) surpass you."

She finished speaking, and the tight-drawn bowstring twanged, which terrified all save Niobe alone. She was emboldened by misfortune. The sisters were standing about their brothers' biers with loosened hair and robes of black. One of these, while trying to draw the shaft from her brother's flesh, sank down dying, with her face upon him.

### The Final Disaster

A second, attempting to console her grieving mother, suddenly grew silent and was bent double by a wound from an unseen source. One fell while trying in vain to flee. Another fell dead upon her sister; one tried to hide; you might have seen another rushing about in terror. When six had suffered various wounds and had died, the last child remained. The mother, covering her with her whole body and all her robes, cried out, "Leave me one and that the youngest (the littlest)! Of my many children I beg for the youngest—only for one!" But even while she prayed, the one for whom she prayed fell dead.

### All Tears

Childless now, Niobe sat down amid the lifeless bodies of her sons, her daughters and her husband, and became rigid from her grief (grief turned her to stone). The breeze stirs not her hair; her face is pale and bloodless; her eyes are fixed and staring in her sad face: there is no life in all her form. Her neck cannot bend nor her arms move nor her feet go; within, also, her vital organs are stone. But still she weeps, and caught up by a whirling gust of violent wind, she is snatched away to her own native land. There, set on a mountain peak, she continues to weep; and even to this day tears trickle from her marble face.

## Daedalus

### The Craftsman at Work

Meanwhile, Daedalus, hating utterly his long exile in Crete, and filled with longing to see his native land (*lit.* land of his birth), was hemmed in by the sea. "Though Minos may block escape by land and water," he said, "still the sky at least lies open, and by that route we shall go. Granted that Minos possess all else, he does not possess the air."

So saying, he sets his mind at work upon sciences never explored before, and alters (*lit.* makes new) the laws of nature. For he lays



feathers in order, and, when he has arranged them in this way, he bends them with a gentle curve, to make them look like (*lit. imitate*) real birds' wings. His son, Icarus, was standing beside him, and little knowing that he was handling his own peril, with gleeful face would now catch at the feathers which some passing breeze had blown about, would now soften the yellow wax with his thumb, and by his pranks, would hinder his father's wondrous work.

### A Lesson in Aviation

When now the finishing touches had been placed upon the undertaking, the master workman himself balanced his body on two wings and hung poised on the beaten air.

He equips his son too (with wings) and says: "I warn you, Icarus, to follow a course midway between earth and heaven, lest, if you go too low, the water may weight your wings; if you go too high, the fire may burn them. Fly between the two. And I bid you not to heed (*lit. look at*) Bootes or Helice or the drawn sword of Orion, but shape your course where I shall lead." At the same time, he tells him the rules of flying and fits the unfamiliar wings on the boy's shoulders.

As he worked and warned his son, the old man's cheeks grew wet with tears, and his hands, the hands of a father, shook.

### In Flight

He kissed his son whom he was never to kiss again, and rising on his wings, he flew on ahead, fearing for his companion, just like a bird which has led forth her tender brood from its nest in the treetops. He encourages the boy to follow, teaches him the arts of flight that were to be his ruin, himself flaps his wings and looks back watching his son (*lit. his son's wings*).

Now some fisherman, trying to catch fish with his flexible rod, or a shepherd, leaning upon his crook, or a plowman, (leaning) on his plow-handles, caught sight of them and stood stock-still in astonishment, and believed them to be gods since they could fly through the air.

### Flying Too High

And now Juno's sacred Samos had been passed on the left, and Delos and Paros; Lebinthos was on the right and Calymne, rich in honey, when the boy began to rejoice in his bold flight and, drawn on by his eagerness for the open sky, deserted his leader, and directed his course too high. The scorching rays of the sun as he drew near it (*lit. the nearness of the devouring sun*) softened the fragrant wax that bound his wings together.

The wax melted; his arms are naked (wingless) as he beats them up and down, but, lacking wings, they take no hold on the air. His lips, calling to the last upon the name of his father, are swallowed in the dark blue sea, which took its name from him.

But the unhappy father, now no longer a father, called, "Icarus, Icarus, where are you? In what place shall I search for you? Icarus," he called again and again; and then he beheld the wings floating on the deep and cursed his skill. He buried the body in a tomb, and the land was called from the name of the boy who was buried (there).

## ***Pallas and Arachne***

**Arachne, Proud of her Skill in Weaving, Challenges Pallas Athene**

Neither for place of birth nor for noble descent was Arachne famous, but only for her skill. You would have known that she had been taught by Pallas. Yet she denied it, and, offended at the suggestion that she had had any teacher, no matter how famous, she said: "Let her compete with me. There is nothing which I would not forfeit, if beaten."

Pallas assumed the form of an old woman, put false locks of gray upon her temples, and also supported her tottering limbs with a staff. Then she began to speak thus: "Not everything that advanced age brings in its train are we to shun; experience comes with riper years (from late years). Do not scorn my advice. Seek all the fame you will among mortals for handling wool; but yield to the goddess and with humble voice beg pardon for your words, rash girl. She will grant you pardon if you ask for it."

Arachne regarded the old woman sullenly, left the threads that she had begun, and, scarcely restraining her hands, with anger showing plainly on her face, she thus replied to the disguised Pallas: "You come to me feeble-minded and spent with old age; you have lived too long, that is your trouble. Let your daughter-in-law, if you have one, let your daughter, if you have one, listen to those words of yours. I am quite able to advise myself. Do not think that you have accomplished anything by your warning, for I am still of the same opinion. Why does she not come herself? Why does she avoid this contest?"

Then the goddess exclaimed, "She has come!" and throwing aside the disguise of an old woman, she revealed Pallas. The nymphs and the Mygdonian women worshipped her godhead. Arachne alone remained unafraid.

### Arachne Persists in the Contest

She persists in her challenge, and, in her stupid desire for the prize, she rushes on her fate. For Jove's daughter refuses not, nor warns her further, nor puts off the contest longer. There is no delay; they take up positions in different parts of the room, and each stretches the slender threads upon her loom.

. . .

Not Pallas, nor Envy himself, could find a flaw in Arachne's work. The golden-haired heroic maiden was indignant at Arachne's success and rent the tapestry embroidered with the crimes of the gods. And as she held a shuttle of Cytorian boxwood, three and four times she struck the forehead of Idmonian Arachne. The wretched girl could not endure it, and, with a show of spirit, she put a noose about her neck. As she hung, Pallas, filled with pity, lifted her and said: "Live on indeed, wicked girl, but continue to hang; and that you may not be free from fear for the future, let this same doom of punishment be declared upon your race, even to your remote descendants."

### Arachne is Transformed into a Spinning Spider

Her head becomes very small; her whole body likewise is small. Her slender fingers cling to her side as legs, and all the rest of her is belly; yet from that belly she spins a thread and, as a spider, is busy with her web as of old.

## Orpheus and Eurydice

### The Bride's Ill-Fortune; the Groom's Distress

For while the bride was strolling through the grass accompanied by a group of Naiads, she lost her life, after receiving (a bite) on the ankle from the fang of a serpent.

When the Thracian bard had mourned (*lit.* wept over) her to the full in the upper world, he dared to go down to the Stygian world through the gate of Taenarum that he might rouse the sympathy of the shades as well. And through the unsubstantial throngs and the phantoms who have had the experience of (have received) burial, he came to Persephone and to him who rules those unlovely realms, lord of the shades. Then, striking his lyre (*lit.* strings) in accompaniment to his song, he said:

## Can Music Charm the Gods?

"O you divinities who rule the world which lies beneath the earth, to which all of us who are born mortal return (*lit.* fall back), the cause of my journey is my wife, into whose body a snake poured his poison when trampled (trod) upon, and so snatched away her budding (*lit.* growing) years. I have desired strength to endure, and I will not deny that I have tried (to bear it). But Love has overcome me. This god is well-known in the upper world, but whether he may be (known) here too I do not know; and yet I imagine that he is known here as well, and, if the story of that kidnapping in days gone by does not lie, you, too, were joined by Love. By these places full of fear, by this huge Chaos and these vast and silent realms, I beg of you, unweave (the web of) fate of my Eurydice, brought too swiftly to a close (restore her life too quickly ended). We are in all things due to you, and though we tarry on earth a little while, sooner or later (*lit.* later or more quickly) we speed to one abode. Hither we all make our way; this is our final home; yours is the most lasting sway over the human race. She also shall come within your power (*lit.* shall be of your rule) when of ripe age she shall have completed her proper span of years. I ask the enjoyment of her as a gift from you, but if the fates deny this reprieve for my wife, I am resolved not to return. Rejoice in the death of two."

### The Gods are Moved; They Call Eurydice

Then first, they say, overcome by his song, the cheeks of the Eumenides (Furies) were moist with tears; neither the queen (*lit.* royal wife) nor he who rules the lower world has the heart to say "No" to the suppliant. They call Eurydice. She was among the newly-arrived shades and walked with steps (made) slow from her wound.

### The Bride Restored; but on What Terms!

Orpheus, the Thracian, then received her, with this condition, that he should not turn his eyes back until he had left the valley of Avernus, or else the gift would be of no avail.

### The Goal in Sight but Not Quite Reached

They took the path sloping upward through places of utter silence, a steep path, indistinct and clouded in pitchy darkness. And now they were nearing the margin of the upper earth. Fearing she might faint, and eager to see her, he turned back his longing eyes (*lit.* he, loving, turned back his eyes), and instantly she slipped back (into the depths).

### The Last Farewell

He stretches out his arms, struggling to grasp her or to feel her clasp, but, unhappy one, he clasps nothing but the yielding air. And now,

dying a second time, she uttered no complaint against her husband, for what had she to complain of save that she was beloved? She spoke a last "farewell" (so low) that he scarcely heard it (*lit.* which he scarcely caught with his ears), and fell back again to the same place (from which she had come).

## **Pyramus and Thisbe**

### **Love's Young Dream**

Pyramus and Thisbe—he, the most handsome of young men, and she, fairer than any of the maidens in all the East—dwelt in houses side-by-side, in the city which Semiramis is said to have encircled with walls of burned brick. Living so near, they came to know each other (*lit.* their nearness made the first steps of their acquaintance). In time love grew, and they would have been united in lawful marriage (*lit.* the rite of the torch) too, but their parents forbade. Still—a thing which their parents could not forbid—their hearts ensnared, they were both equally inflamed with love. They had no go-between, but communicated by nods and signs.

In the common wall of the two houses, there was a narrow crack, which had once split when the wall was being built. This flaw, which no one had ever noticed through all these years—but what does love not see?—you, lovers, were the first to see, and made it the pathway for your voices. Safe through this their loving words used to pass in the gentlest of whispers. As night came on, they said good-by and gave, each to his own side of the wall, kisses that did not pass through.

### **"Oh, Let's Elope!" The Rendezvous**

The following dawn had put out the starry beacons of the night, and the sun's rays had dried the grass covered with frost, (when) they came together at the accustomed place. Then in low whispers, first uttering many a lament, they decided to try, in the silence of the night, to slip past their guardians and steal out of doors, and, when they had gotten out, to leave the city (*lit.* the dwellings of the city) as well, and to meet at Ninus' tomb and hide in the shade of a tree. Now there was a tree there rich with snow-white fruit, a tall mulberry tree, close by a cool spring.



They liked their plan, and the daylight seemed slow to depart, but at last the sun plunged headlong into the waters, and from the same waves the night came up.

#### Thisbe Arrives First: She Sees the Lioness

Now Thisbe, stealthily turning the door on its hinge, steals out through the darkness, eludes her parents, and arrives duly at the tomb with her face well veiled (*lit.* veiled as to her face) and sits down under the trysting-tree (appointed tree). Love made her bold. But look! here comes a lioness, her jaws all dripping (*lit.* smeared as to her frothing jaws) with the blood of newly-slain cattle, to slake her thirst at the nearby spring. Far off, Babylonian Thisbe sees the lioness by the rays of the moon, and flees with trembling feet into the dark cave, and as she flees she leaves behind her her mantle which had fallen from her back. When the savage lioness has quenched her thirst by copious draughts of water, returning to the woods, she found by chance the light garment without its owner and tore it with bloody jaws.

Pyramus, coming out a little later, saw the unmistakable tracks of the wild beast plain in the deep dust and his whole face grew pale (*lit.* he grew pale over his whole face). However, when he found the cloak too, smeared with blood, he cried, "One night shall bring two lovers to death. But of the two she was more worthy of long life; on my soul lies all the guilt. Oh, I have destroyed you, poor girl, because I bade you come forth by night into this dangerous (*lit.* full of fear) place, and did not myself come here first. (Come,) rend my body and devour my guilty flesh with your fierce teeth, O all ye lions who have your lairs beneath this cliff! But it is a coward's part (merely) to wish for death." He picks up Thisbe's cloak and carries it to the shade of the trysting-tree.

#### The Price of Love

"Drink now my blood too," he cries. So saying, he drew the sword which he wore girt about him, and plunged the blade into his side. And now, still fearful (but) not wanting to (*lit.* so as not to) disappoint her lover, Thisbe comes back (from her hiding place) and looks about for the youth both with eyes and soul, eager to tell him what great perils she has escaped. And although she recognizes the place and the shape of the familiar tree, yet the color of its fruit makes her uncertain. She wonders whether this is the tree. While she hesitates, she sees somebody's limbs quivering on the bloody ground, and starts back, paler than boxwood, and trembling like the sea which quivers when a slight breeze grazes the surface. But when after a little delay she recognizes

her lover, she smites her innocent arms with loud lamentation and, tearing her hair and embracing the beloved form, she fills his wounds with tears, mingling these with his blood. And as she kissed his lips, now cold (in death), she cried out, "O my Pyramus, what mischance has taken you away from me? Pyramus! answer me. It is your dearest Thisbe calling you. Listen, and lift your drooping head!"

At the name of Thisbe, Pyramus raised his eyes, now heavy with death, and, having looked upon her face, closed them again. Now, when she saw her own cloak and the ivory scabbard empty of its sword, she said, "It was your own hand and your love, unhappy boy, that took your life. I, too, have a hand brave for this one deed; I, too, have love. This shall give me strength for the fatal blow.

"And do you, O tree, who now shelter with your branches the poor body of one, and soon will cover two, keep the marks of our death and always bear fruit dark-colored and fit (suitable) for grief, as a memorial of our double death."

She spoke, and fitting the point beneath her breast, she fell forward on the sword which was still warm with (her lover's) blood.

#### The Memorial

Her prayers touched the gods and touched the parents, for the color of the (mulberry) fruit is dark red when it is fully ripe, and all that remains from the funeral pyres rests in a single urn.

## AULUS GELLIUS

### ***Selections from the Noctes Atticae***

#### The Ring Finger

We have heard that the ancient Greeks wore a ring on the finger of the left hand which is next to the little (finger). They say that Roman men, too, commonly wore rings in that way. Apion in his *Egyptian History* says the reason for this usage is as follows: when human bodies were cut into and opened, as was the custom in Egypt, it was found that from that one finger of which we have spoken a very fine nerve proceeds and reaches the human heart, (and) that it therefore seemed not unreasonable that that finger should be honored with such an ornament, since it seemed to be continuous and, as it were, united with the heart.

#### Croesus' Dumb Son

When the son of King Croesus was already old enough to speak, he was dumb; and when he had already become a well-grown youth, he was likewise unable to say anything. For a long time he was considered mute. When one of the enemy was rushing upon his father with drawn sword not knowing that he was the king, the young man opened his mouth, making an effort to cry out; and by that effort he broke the impediment and bond upon his tongue and spoke out plainly, shouting to the enemy not to kill King Croesus. Then the foe drew back his sword and the king's life was saved (the king was presented with life). From that time on the young man began to speak.

#### Remarks of Marcus Cato

Marcus Cato, ex-consul and ex-censor, says that with state and private individuals being already wealthy, his country-seats were unadorned and plain up to the seventieth year of his lifetime. And later he uses these words on that subject: "I have no building," he says, "or utensil or garment bought at a great price, no costly slave or maidservant. If I have anything to use, I use it; if not, I do without it. As far as I am concerned, each man

may use and enjoy his own (possessions).” Then he adds, “They find fault with me because I lack many things; but I (find fault) with them because they cannot do without them.”

### Alexander and Bucephalas

The horse of King Alexander was called Bucephalas. It seemed worth recording (worthy of memory) about this horse that, when he was equipped and armed for battle, he never allowed himself to be mounted by any one but the king.

In the war in India, while Alexander, sitting upon that horse, was performing gallant deeds, he failed to look out sufficiently for his own safety and drove the horse into a mass of the enemy. Missiles were hurled against Alexander from all sides; the horse was pierced through with deep wounds in neck and side, but, although dying, he nevertheless carried the king from the midst of the foe at full gallop; and when he had taken him beyond (the range of) the weapons, he (the horse) immediately fell and breathed out his last. Then, after winning the victory in that war, King Alexander founded a city in that region and called it Bucephalon in honor of his horse.

### The Priest of Jupiter (*Dialis Flamen*)

It is unlawful for the priest of Jupiter to ride upon a horse; it is likewise unlawful for him to see an army in battle array; therefore the priest of Jupiter was rarely elected consul, because wars were entrusted to the consuls; also it is never lawful (is always unlawful) for the priest to take an oath and, likewise, to wear a ring unless it is perforated.

He has no knot in his headdress or girdle or in any other part (of his dress). Only a free man may cut the hair of the *Dialis*.

He may not sleep away from his bed for three nights in a row, and no other person may sleep in that bed.

If he has lost his wife, he abdicates the office of *flamen*. He never enters a place where there is a tomb; he never touches a dead body.

### How a Vestal Virgin was “Taken” by the Chief Pontiff

Those who have written about “taking” a Vestal virgin have stated that it is unlawful for a girl to be taken who is younger than six or older than ten (years); also a girl may not be taken who has an impediment in her speech or impaired hearing. But they say that one whose sister has been chosen to that priesthood deserves exemption, likewise one whose father is a *flamen* or an *augur*.

Now, as soon as the Vestal virgin has been chosen, escorted into the House of Vesta, and handed over to the pontiffs, she immediately passes out of control of her father. The girl (she) who was the first to be taken was taken by King Numa.

Now, a Vestal is said "to be taken," it appears, because, having been grasped by the hand of the chief pontiff, she is led away from the parent under whose control she is, as though taken in war. These are the words of the pontiff: "I take you, Amata, as priestess of Vesta, to perform the sacred rites which it is lawful for a priestess of Vesta to perform for the Roman people."

She (the Vestal) is called "Amata" by the chief pontiff because there is a tradition that this was the name of the girl who was the first taken.

#### Demetrius the Besieger at Rhodes

The island of Rhodes, of most ancient fame, and the fairest and richest town in it were being besieged by Demetrius, a famous general of his age, who had invented many engines for the capture of towns. In (the course of) a siege there he was then preparing to attack, pillage and destroy by fire a certain building which lay outside the walls of the city with (only) a small garrison.

In this building was a very famous picture, the work of Protogenes, the distinguished painter; he (Demetrius) begrudged the Rhodians the beauty of that work (of art). The Rhodians sent envoys to Demetrius with these words: "What, you scoundrel," they said, "is your reason for wishing to destroy our painting by setting fire to the building? For, if you conquer all of us and take this whole town, you will also, by your victory, gain possession of that painting, entire and unharmed; but if you are unable to overcome us by siege, we beg you to take thought lest it bring shame upon you that, because you could not conquer the Rhodians in war, you waged war with the dead Protogenes." When he heard this (remark) from the envoys, he spared both picture and city.

#### The Rise of Ventidius Bassus

In ancient times many men who were previously of very obscure birth rose to the highest position of dignity. Ventidius Bassus was born in Picenum, of humble station; in the Social War his mother, along with Bassus, was taken prisoner by Pompeius Strabo, the father of Pompey the Great; presently, when Pompeius Strabo celebrated a triumph, the boy was carried in his mother's arms among the rest (of the prisoners) before the general's chariot. Later, when he had grown up, he barely made a living for himself by procuring mules and carriages, which he hired to magistrates. In that occupation he made the acquaintance of Gaius Caesar (he began to be known to Gaius Caesar), and he set out with him to the Gallic provinces. Then, because he acted very energetically in that province and later during the Civil War carried out so actively the commissions entrusted to him, he not only gained Caesar's friendship but also, because of it, rose even to the highest rank. Afterward he was also made tribune of the people and then praetor, and at that time he was



declared a public enemy by the Senate. Later he not only regained his former rank but obtained the pontificate and then the consulship also. At this the Roman people, who remembered that Ventidius Bassus had made a living by caring for mules, were so indignant that verses were posted everywhere throughout the streets of the city:

Assemble, all (you) augurs and soothsayers!  
Of late a strange portent has passed before our eyes.  
For he who has been made consul  
Used to curry mules.

Hasten, all augurs true,  
A strange portent to view.  
As a consul now rules,  
The once valet of mules.

NOTE TO THE TEACHER: Set your budding poets to work.

### Tales that Travelers Tell

When I was returning from Greece to Italy and came to Brundisium, I was walking about in that (famous) harbor after disembarking and saw some bundles of books set forth for sale. At once I eagerly made for the books. Now all those books were in Greek, full of marvellous tales. I asked their price, and, attracted by their wonderful and unexpected cheapness, I bought a large number of books at a small price, and during the next two nights I ran through them all.

There were in those books items of this sort: the Scythians, who pass their life in the far north, eat human flesh; also there are men in the same latitude having one eye in the middle of the forehead; also there are other men of remarkable swiftness, whose footsteps are turned backward, not, as in the case of all other men, pointed forward. Further it has been handed down that in a very distant land called Albania men are born whose hair turns white in childhood and who can see better by night than by day.

This also is written in the same books (an account I later read in the seventh book of *The Natural History* of Plinius Secundus) that there are in the land of Africa certain families of persons who work spells by voice and tongue; if by chance they have praised beautiful trees, plentiful crops, charming children, fine horses, all these suddenly die. Also in the mountains of the land of India there are men with the heads of dogs; and in the farthest lands of the East too there are men who run by hopping on their one leg; there are certain men too who have no necks and who have eyes in their shoulders. Those same writers say that there is a tribe in farthest India whose bodies are feathered after the manner of birds; not far from them are the Pygmies also, the tallest of whom are no more than two and a quarter feet tall.

## CICERO

### ***From Cicero's Correspondence***

1. Cicero to Atticus Greeting. As I write this letter, thirty days have passed during which I have received no message from you. It is my intention now, as I have written you before, to go to Epirus and there preferably to await whatever may happen. If any situation arises which you see favorable or unfavorable to me, I beg you to write me as clearly as possible and that in my behalf, as you yourself suggest, you write such letters as you think are needed. Oct. 28.

2. Cicero to Atticus Greeting. After his arrival at Philippus' house in the evening, the villa was so crowded with soldiers that the dining room in which Caesar himself was to dine could hardly be kept free; it is a fact that there were two thousand men! Of course I was nervous about what would happen the next day, and so Cassius Barba came to my help; he furnished me with a guard. The camp was pitched in the open; my villa was made secure.

After noon Caesar took a walk on the shore (beach). After 2 P.M. he took a bath; he made his toilet and took his place at table. He ate and drank with satisfaction. His companions were received (and served) plentifully in three dining rooms besides; and his slaves lacked nothing. Why say more?

The guest, however, was not the sort of person to whom you would say, "Please drop in on your way back." Once is enough. What more can I say (Why do you ask)? He was pleased and enjoyed himself. He said that he would spend one day at Puteoli and the next near Baiae.

After a short stay here, I'll pass on to my estate at Tusculum.

3. Cicero to Atticus Greetings. Before I settle down somewhere, do not expect (you will not expect) long letters from me or letters always written by my own hand; but when I have time, I shall send you both. We are now

finishing a journey over a hot and dusty road. I sent letters yesterday from Ephesus. I think that I shall be in my province on August 1. But meanwhile these items of news such as I was glad to hear (such as I wished) were brought to me: first, peace with the Parthians; secondly, the conclusion of contracts with the tax-collectors; and, finally, the suppression of a mutiny of soldiers by Appius.

The people of the Province of Asia (Asia) gave us a wonderful welcome. Our arrival put no one to the least expense. I am in great fear but of good hope. All of our party have now arrived except your Tullius. I intend to set out directly for the army, to devote the remaining months of summer to military matters and the winter to the administration of justice. Here you have a letter full of haste and dust; my other letters will be more detailed.

4. Trebonius to Cicero Greetings. If you are well, I am glad. I came to Athens on May 22 and there, as I had sincerely wished, I saw your son devoted to studies of the highest type. You will be able to understand my joy at this even if I say nothing. For you are well aware how highly I prize you and how I rejoice in all things that are to your interest, even the most insignificant. Do not think, my dear Cicero, that I flatter you. Of all those who are in Athens no one is dearer to me than your son or more devoted to those pursuits which you prize so highly. Therefore I gladly congratulate you—something I can honestly do.

When your son mentioned to me in conversation that he wished to see Asia, he was not only invited but also begged by me to do so, for he will be able to go there with me when I go to Asia as governor. I shall attend to this detail also, that Cratippus be with him, so that you will not think that in Asia he will be on holiday from these studies. I see him prepared to make progress from day to day by study and practice. May 25 from Athens.

#### A Series of Letters Written by Cicero to his Wife Terentia in 48-47 B.C.

5. Tullius sends greetings to his Terentia. As to your rejoicing that I have arrived safely in Italy, I hope you may rejoice constantly; but disturbed by anxiety and serious wrongs (I have suffered), I fear that I may adopt a plan which I cannot easily disentangle. Therefore, as far as you can, help me; yet I cannot think what you can do. There is no reason for your coming to me at this time; the way is long and not safe, and I do not see what assistance you can give me if you do come. Farewell. Brundisium, Nov. 4.

6. Tullius sends greeting to his Terentia. Amid my greatest griefs I am tormented about the health of our Tullia, of whom there is nothing further that I can write to you, for I truly know that she is equally a great concern to you. As to your wish that I come nearer, I see that I must do so; I should have done so before this, but many things have hindered me, which not even now have been settled. But I am awaiting letters from Pomponius which I should like you to see are delivered as soon as possible. Take care of yourself (your health).

7. Tullius sends warmest greetings to his Terentia. To all my other wretchedness is added grief concerning both Dolabella's health and Tullia's. I do not know at all what course of action I am to adopt or what I am to do. Please take care of yourself and Tullia (your health and Tullia's). Farewell.

8. Tullius sends greetings to his Terentia. If I had anything to write to you, I should do so, both at greater length and more often. Now you see what shape my affairs are in; but you will be able to learn from Trebatius how worried I am. Take care of yourself and Tullia (your health and Tullia's).

9. Tullius sends greetings to Terentia. If you are well, I am glad. We had decided, as I had previously written you, to send (our son) Cicero to meet Caesar, but we changed our plan because we heard nothing of Caesar's arrival. Of other matters, although there is nothing new, yet you will be able to learn from Sicca what we wish and what we think at this time needs to be done. I still have Tullia with me. Take good care of yourself (your health). Farewell. June 20.

10. If you are well, I am glad. I am well. We are daily expecting couriers. If they come, we shall perhaps be informed what we ought to do, and we shall tell you at once. Take good care of yourself (your health). Farewell. Sept. 1.

## PLINY

### *The Governor and the Emperor*

#### 1. Pliny Congratulates Trajan on his Succession to the Empire

GAIUS PLINY TO THE EMPEROR TRAJAN. Your loyal affection, most sacred Emperor, had hoped that you would succeed your father as late as possible, but the immortal gods have hastened to advance your merits to the helm of the state. Therefore, I pray that everything may turn out prosperously for you and, through you, for the human race. Both as a friend and as a loyal subject, may I add my wishes that you may be healthy and happy, most excellent Emperor.

#### 2. A Request to Grant Roman Citizenship to Pliny's Physician

GAIUS PLINY TO THE EMPEROR TRAJAN. Having been attacked last year by a very severe illness, my lord, which even threatened my life, I employed a physician, whose care and diligence I can reward only by some favor on your part. Therefore, I ask that you grant him Roman citizenship; he is a foreigner by the name of Harpocras.

#### 3. The Emperor Grants Pliny Leave of Absence

TRAJAN TO PLINY. Both on account of your private affairs and state matters, you have given me many reasons why you desire leave of absence; but as for me the mere expression of a wish on your part suffices, for I do not doubt that you will return to your post as soon as you can.

Although I am very sparing of honors of this kind, yet I permit a statue to be erected to me by you; for I would not seem to check the course of your loyalty towards me.

#### 4. Congratulations to Trajan on his Victory over the Dacians

GAIUS PLINY TO THE EMPEROR TRAJAN. Most excellent Emperor, both on your account and on account of the state, I congratulate



you on your great and glorious victory; and I pray the immortal gods that so happy a result may attend all your designs, so that through your great virtues the fame of our empire may be both renewed and enlarged.

#### 5. Plans for a Journey

GAIUS PLINY TO THE EMPEROR TRAJAN. Because I am confident, my lord, that the news is of interest to you, I am writing to tell you that I have sailed with all my retinue to Ephesus. After being detained by contrary winds, I am now preparing to make for my province, partly by boat, partly by carriage. For just as the heat waves prevent traveling by land, so the continuous winds are a hindrance to proceeding by sea.

#### 6. Trajan's Reply

TRAJAN TO PLINY. You were right in telling (me of this, *i.e.* of the plans for your journey), my dearest Secundus, for I wish to learn by what kind of trip you reach your province. It is a wise decision of yours to travel at times by ship and at times by carriage, as the nature of the country suggests.

#### 7. Trajan's Interest in the Affairs of Bithynia

TRAJAN TO PLINY. My dearest Secundus, I learned from your letter on what day you reached Bithynia. The people of that province (*lit.* the provincials) will realize, I believe, that thoughtful provision has been made for them by me. For you will take care to make it clear to them that you have been sent in place of me. Moreover, you must especially investigate the financial affairs of the cities.

As for surveyors, I have scarcely sufficient even for those works which are being carried on either at Rome or in the neighborhood. But in every province, surveyors may be found whom you can trust.

#### 8. A Disastrous Fire in Nicomedia, a Celebrated City of Bithynia

GAIUS PLINY TO THE EMPEROR TRAJAN. While I was traveling around a part of the province, at Nicomedia a most extensive fire destroyed many homes of private citizens and two public buildings. It spread far and wide owing both to the violence of the wind and to the inactivity of the people, who stood by as motionless spectators. For nowhere was there a fire engine for public use or bucket or in short any piece of equipment suitable for suppressing (putting out) fires. Such equipment, as I have already directed, will be procured.

Do you think, Sir, that a guild of firemen should be established?

## ***Selections from Pliny's Personal Letters***

### **9. A Day on his Tuscan Estate**

PLINY SENDS GREETINGS TO FUSCUS. You ask how I portion out my day in summer at my Tuscan estate. I awaken whenever it pleases (me), generally about the first hour, often earlier, seldom later. The windows remain closed. I am free and left to myself. I ponder over any work I have in hand. I call my secretary, and, after daylight is admitted (into the room), I dictate what I have composed. He withdraws, is called in again, and again dismissed.

At the fourth or fifth hour—for there is no fixed hour—as the weather recommends, I go forth from the house; I continue my composition and dictation.

I get into my carriage; there also I employ myself as I do when walking. (On my return) I take a little nap, then a walk, and presently read aloud and vigorously some Greek or Latin speech, not so much for the sake of my voice as of my stomach.

At supper, if I have only my wife or a few friends with me, I have a book read to me, and after supper some one who can read a comedy or a musician (entertains us); presently, I take a walk with my family and guests, among whom are some scholars.

Thus even the longest day is swiftly brought to an end.

### **10. Pliny Chides his Friend for not Writing**

GAIUS PLINY SENDS GREETINGS TO FABIVS IYSTVS. For a long time you have sent me no letters. I have nothing to write, you say. But write this very phrase, that you have nothing to write, or at least simply that phrase with which our forefathers used to begin (a letter)—“If you are well, it is well; I am well.” This is enough for me, for it is a great deal. Do you think that I am jesting? I am asking (you to do so) in all seriousness. See that I learn how you are, because I cannot remain in ignorance without the greatest apprehension. Farewell.

### **11. Pliny Enjoys Hunting**

GAIUS PLINY SENDS GREETINGS TO CORNELIVS TACITVS. You will laugh, and laugh you may. I, the man you know, have taken three boars, very fine ones too, I'm telling you. “You yourself?” you ask. Yes, I myself; yet not so that I entirely departed from my laziness and sedentary ways. I sat at the nets; there was no lance near at hand, but

only pencil and writing tablets. I pondered over something and wrote it down, so that, if I brought back empty hands, yet I might bring back full tablets.

This way of studying is not to be despised. For the mind is aroused by the motion of the body. On all sides the woods and the solitude and that very silence which is part of hunting set our thoughts going. Therefore, when you go hunting, you may, upon the strength of my example, take your writing tablets with you. Not only Diana but also Minerva wanders in the mountains.

## 12. Sad Death of Fundanus' Young Daughter

GAIUS PLINY SENDS GREETINGS TO MARCELLINUS. I write you this in deepest sorrow. The younger daughter of our friend Fundanus is dead. I have never seen anything livelier than this girl, more lovable, or more deserving not only of longer life but, we may almost say, of immortality. She had not yet completed her fourteenth year, and already she had the wisdom and dignity of a woman, at the same time she had the attractiveness of a girl along with the modesty of a maiden. How she used to cling to her father's neck! How affectionately and modestly she embraced us, her father's friends! With what patience, yes, with what heroism, did she endure her last illness! She has left us many weighty reasons for both regret and grief.

She had already been betrothed to an excellent young man; the day of the wedding had already been chosen; we had already been invited. How our joy was changed to grief! I cannot express in words what a blow my heart received when I heard Fundanus himself giving instructions that, what he would have spent on garments and gems, should be expended on incense and perfumes.

## 13. Pliny Helps to Endow a School

GAIUS PLINY SENDS GREETINGS TO CORNELIUS TACITUS. I am glad that you have reached the city safely. I myself will linger on my estate at Tusculum for the next few days to finish a little work I have in hand.

Recently, while I was in my home town, there came to greet me the youthful son of a fellow townsman of mine. I said to him, "Do you go to school?" "Yes," he replied. "Where?" "At Milan." "Why not here?"

And his father (for he was there too and indeed had himself brought the boy) added, "Because we have no teachers here."

"Why no teachers? For it is important to you (*lit.* it is to your interest) who are fathers"—and opportunely several fathers were within hearing—

"that your sons study here. For where can they stay more agreeably than in their home town, or be supervised more modestly than under the eyes of their parents, or at a lower cost than at home? It is easy, once you have collected the money, to hire teachers. Moreover I, who as yet have no children, am ready, on behalf of our community, as if on behalf of a daughter or parent, to give one-third of the sum which you will decide to collect.

"You can confer nothing more glorious upon your children, nothing more pleasing upon your home town. Let those who are born here be educated here."

I have repeated this just as it happened (*lit.* from the source) so that you may undertake what I ask. Out of the number of learned men who gather about you in admiration of your talents, look around for (the kind of) teachers whom we can engage. Good-by.

#### 14. Pliny Plans to Enlarge a Temple to Ceres. A Letter to his Architect

GAIUS PLINY SENDS GREETINGS TO MUSTIUS. On the advice of the soothsayers I must repair the temple of Ceres on my estate, improve it, and enlarge it. It is a very old and narrow building, although on a particular day it is very crowded. For on the Ides of September, a large throng assembles from the whole district, many things are transacted, many vows undertaken, many vows paid. But there is no shelter in the neighborhood either from the rain or from the sun. Therefore I think that I shall at the same time be acting bountifully and with reverence for the gods if I construct as beautiful a temple as possible and add porticoes to the temple—the temple for the use of the goddess, the porticoes for the use of men.

So please buy four marble columns, of whatever type shall seem best to you. Besides, a statue of the goddess herself will either have to be made or purchased, because the old wooden statue has been mutilated by age.

#### 15. The Boy and the Dolphin

GAIUS PLINY SENDS GREETINGS TO CANINIUS. I have heard a story which is true and worthy of your poetic genius.

There is in Africa a colonial town named Hippo near the sea. Here people of every age are fond of fishing, sailing, and swimming—especially boys. With the boys it is a fine and manly achievement to swim out into the deepest waters, and he who leaves the shore and the other swimmers at the greatest distance is the victor.

In this contest, a certain boy was bolder than the rest. A dolphin met the boy, and sometimes swam before him, sometimes behind him, some-

times around him; at last the dolphin took the boy upon his back, set him down, and took him up again; he carried the trembling boy first into deep water, then turned back to the shore, and restored him to dry land and to his comrades.

The story (of this adventure) spread (*lit. creeps*) through the town. Everybody gathered together, looked at the boy himself as at a miracle, asked him questions, listened, talked. On the following day they thronged the shore. The boys went out swimming; among them the boy (of whom I am speaking), but more cautiously. The dolphin again came to the boy. The boy fled with the rest (of his companions). As if he were inviting the boy, the dolphin leaped out (of the water) and dived again.

This (happened) on the next day, the day after, and for several days together. The boy who had first made the experiment leaped on his back, was carried out and back; he thought that the dolphin was fond of him, and he himself was fond of the dolphin; neither feared (the other), neither was feared (by the other).

## ***On the Eruption of Vesuvius***

Gaius Pliny to his friend Tacitus Greetings. You say that, moved by the letter which I wrote you at your request about my uncle's death, you are eager to learn not only what terrors but also what hazards I faced when left at Misenum. "Although my mind shudders at remembering, I shall begin."

### **The Night of the Eruption**

After my uncle's departure I myself spent the rest of the day with my studies (it was for that reason I had stayed behind): then I took a bath, dined, and dozed restlessly for a short time. That night the shocks became so violent that everything was thought not to be shaken but overturned. My mother hurried into my room. We sat down in the courtyard of the house, which separated the sea from the buildings by a moderate distance.

### **They Leave the House in the Morning**

By now it was the first hour of the day, but the light was still dim and faint. Then at length we decided to leave the town; a panic-stricken mob followed us. Once beyond the buildings (of the town) we stopped. There we had many extraordinary and terrifying experiences. For the carriages which we had ordered to be brought out were tossed in opposite directions, though the ground was quite level, and would not remain stationary even when wedged with stones.



### Pliny Refuses to Save Himself without his Family

At this point a friend of my uncle said rather sharply and urgently, "If your uncle is (still) alive, he wants you to be saved; if he is dead, he wanted you to survive: why put off your escape (do you delay to escape)?" We answered that we should not be guilty of looking out for our own safety while still uncertain about his safety. Without waiting longer, he (the friend) hurried off and rushed away at a dead run.

Not much later the cloud sank down to earth and covered the sea. Then my mother begged, urged, ordered me to escape as best I could, saying that I, being a young man, could get away, whereas she, old and slow, would die happily as long as she had not been the cause of my death. I, on the other hand, said that I would not save myself without her; then, clasping her hand, I forced her to quicken her pace. She gave in reluctantly, blaming herself for delaying me. Ashes were already falling, but as yet only thinly. I looked around; a dense black cloud hung over us from behind, following us like a torrent spreading over the earth. "Let us turn aside," I said, "while we can still see, for fear that we may be trampled underfoot by the crowd in the darkness."

### Confusion of the Mob in the Dark

We had scarcely sat down when darkness fell, not that of a moonless or cloudy night, but such as is found in a closed room when the lamp has been put out. You might hear the cries of women, the whimpering of infants, and the shouting of men; some were calling their parents, some their children, some their wives, trying to recognize them by their voices; some lamented their own fate, others that of relatives; there were some who in fear of death prayed for death; many raised their hands to the gods.

### With the Coming of Day Conditions Worsen

Then there was genuine daylight, and the sun actually shone forth, but wan as it generally is when it is in eclipse. Returning to Misenum, we spent an anxious night alternating between hope and fear. Fear prevailed, for the earthquakes went on. Yet, in spite of the danger we had experienced and were expecting, we had no thought of leaving until we could receive some news of my uncle.

## HORACE

### *Selections from the Satires*

#### 1. THE TOWN AND THE COUNTRY MOUSE

Once upon a time—such is the tale—a country mouse welcomed a town mouse in his poor hole, an old host (entertaining) an old friend. Roughly he lived, with a watchful eye on his hoard, yet so that he could open his thrifty soul in acts of hospitality. In short, he did not grudge his store of chick-peas or long oats, but bringing in his mouth a dried raisin and half-eaten pieces of bacon, he gave them (to his guest), being eager by variety of fare to overcome the daintiness of one who with squeamish tooth would scarcely touch each morsel; while, outstretched on fresh straw, the master of the house was eating spelt and darnel, leaving the delicacies (to his guest).

At length the town mouse cries to him, “What pleasure do you take, my friend, in living so hard a life on the ridge of a steep grove? Don’t you prefer men (company) and the town to these wild woods? Take my advice and set out with me. Since earthly creatures live with mortal lives allotted them by fate and there is no escape from death for either great or small, therefore, my good fellow, while you may, live happy amid what is pleasant; live and remember how brief your life is.” When these words had impressed the rustic, he leaped forth lightly from his house. Then the two pursue their journey as planned, eager to creep under the walls of the town under cover of night.

And now night was holding the mid space of heaven, when the two planted their feet in a wealthy house, where covers dyed in scarlet glittered on ivory couches and many courses were left over from a great banquet of yesterday, in baskets piled up close by. So when he (the host) has the rustic stretched out on purple covers, he bustles about in waiter-style, bringing up one dish after the other, performing too all the duties of a home-bred slave and tasting (licking) beforehand all that he serves. The country mouse, reclining, is enjoying his changed lot and, surrounded by good food, playing the part of a happy guest when suddenly a loud slamming of the doors tumbles the two from their couches. Frightened they

ran from end to end of the room, half dead, their panic increasing, as (soon as) the high house resounded with (the barking of) Molossian dogs. Then the country mouse said: "No need have I for such a life as this, and so fare you well; my wood and my hole safe from alarms will solace me with humble vetch."

## 2. UNPLEASANT COMPANY

### A Talkative Fellow

I was strolling by chance along the Sacred Way, pondering some trifle or other, as is my custom, and wholly absorbed in it. A fellow known to me by name only runs up and seizes my hand with "How goes it, old chap (my dearest fellow)?"

"Fairly well, as things go now," I answer; "I hope you're doing well."

When (since) he keeps following me up, I anticipate him with "There's nothing you wish, is there?"

But, "You should get to know me," he says, "I am a man of letters."

To this I say, "Because of this I'll think all the more of you." Dreadfully anxious to get away, sometimes I walked on more quickly, sometimes I stopped and whispered something to my slave, while the sweat ran right down to my heels. "O Bolanus, you lucky man with your hot temper," I was saying to myself while the fellow chattered about anything and everything, praising the streets, the city.

When I made him no answer, "You're awfully anxious," he said, "to get away; I've seen that for some time; but you are getting nowhere; I'll stick with you; I'll stay by you to your journey's end. Now where is your way from here?"

"There's no need for you to go out of your way; I want to visit a friend whom you do not know; he is sick in bed a long way off, on the other side of the Tiber near Caesar's gardens."

"I've nothing to do and I'm not lazy; I shall come all the way with you."

I drop my ears like a sullen-tempered ass when too heavy a load is placed upon his back. He begins, "If I know anything about myself, you will not value Viscus or Varius more highly as a friend. For who can write more verses than I or more quickly? Who can dance more gracefully? My singing even Hermogenes might envy."

### What the Gypsy Foretold

Here was a chance of interrupting him. "Haven't you (Have you) a mother or kindred who will worry about you (are dependent on your good health)?"

"Not even one; I have laid them all to rest."

"Lucky they! Now I am left. Finish me off too, for the hour is at hand for that sad fate which, when I was a boy, an old Sabellian woman foretold for me, after shaking her divining urn:

"This boy neither dread poison, nor foeman's sword, nor pleurisy, nor cough, nor crippling gout shall carry off; but at some time or other a chatterbox shall demolish him; if he is wise, let him avoid talkers as soon as he grows up.'"

### No Help in Sight

We had now come to Vesta's temple and one quarter of the day was now past; and it chanced that at that hour he was bound to answer a plaintiff (in a lawsuit); if he failed to appear, he would lose his suit. "If you will be so kind," he said, "attend me (in court) a while."

"May I die if I either have the strength to stand (all through a trial) or have any knowledge of civil law: besides I must hurry, you know where."

"I wonder," he said, "what I ought to do, abandon you or my case."

"Oh me, if you please."

"I won't do it," says he and begins to lead the way. As it is hard to fight with one who is your master, I follow him.

### Introduce Me to Maecenas

"On what terms is Maecenas with you?" so he starts afresh. "He is a man of few friends and has a very level head. No one has made a shrewder use of his opportunities. You would have a powerful backer who could support you, if you were willing to introduce your humble servant; may I die if you wouldn't find that you had cleared everyone out of your way."

"We do not live there on such terms as you imagine. There is no house cleaner or more free from such intrigues than that. It doesn't trouble me," I say, "that one (anyone of Maecenas' circle) is richer than I or more learned. Each has his own place."

"What you tell me is wonderful, scarcely to be believed."

"And yet it is so."

"You fire me with still stronger desire to be near him."

"You have only to wish it—such is your valor—you'll storm the fort. He is a man who can be won and for that reason he makes the first approaches difficult."

"I'll not fail myself; I'll bribe his slaves; if I'm shut out today I'll not give up; I'll seek out the fitting time; I'll fall in with him at the street corners; I'll escort him on his way downtown to the Forum. Life has granted nothing to mortals without great toil."

While he is thus running on, behold, Aristius Fuscus met us, a dear friend of mine, one who, I felt sure, knew this fellow right well. We stop. "Where are you coming from?" and "Where are you going?" is asked and answered on both sides. I began to pull his toga and to pinch his unresponsive arm, nodding, rolling my eyes for him to save me. But with cruel humor he smiled and pretended not to understand. I began to burn up (my gall began to burn my liver).

"Surely you told me that you wished to talk to me privately about something."

"I remember well, but I will tell you at a better time. Today is the thirtieth Sabbath. Do you want me to insult our Jews?"

"I have no religious scruples," I say.

"But I have—I am a little weaker—one of the many. You will pardon me; I'll talk to you on another occasion."

To think that this day's sun rose so black for me. The wretch takes himself off and leaves me like a victim about to be sacrificed.

### Saved!

But by luck the plaintiff in the suit comes to meet my companion. "Where are you going, you rascal?" he cries in a loud voice and "May I use you as a witness?" I offer my ear to touch. He hurries the man to court; there is shouting on both sides, and people gather from everywhere. Thus Apollo saved me.



## JEROME

### ***The Vulgate: The Story of Joseph***

#### Joseph and his Brothers

Jacob dwelt in the land of Canaan. When Joseph was sixteen years of age, while still a boy, he pastured the flock with his brothers. Now Jacob loved Joseph more than all his other sons, for he was the child of his old age (he had begotten him in his old age); and he made him a coat of many colors. And his brothers, seeing that he was loved by his father more than all the other sons, hated him and could not speak to him peaceably. And it happened that Joseph had a dream which he told to his brothers; and this was the cause of greater hatred.

And he (Joseph) said to them, "Hear my dream which I have seen: I thought that we were binding sheaves in the field, and lo! my sheaf stood up and remained upright and your sheaves, standing around, bowed down to my sheaf." His brothers answered, "Surely you will not be our king? or shall we be subject to your authority?"

He saw another dream also, which he told to his brothers, saying, "I saw in a dream, lo! the sun and moon and eleven stars were bowing down to me." When he had related it to his father and brothers, his father rebuked him and said, "What means this dream which you have seen? Shall we—I and your mother and your brothers—bow down to you to the ground?" Therefore his brothers envied him, but his father in silence kept the matter in mind.

When his brothers were stopping in Shechem pasturing their father's flocks, his father said to him, "Your brothers are pasturing the sheep; come, I shall send you to them." When Joseph answered, "I am ready," he said to him, "Go and see whether all is well with your brothers and the flocks, and bring me back word what is going on." Joseph was sent, and he came to Shechem. And a man found him wandering in the field and asked what he was seeking. He replied, "I seek my brothers; tell me where they are pasturing the flocks." And the man said to him, "They went away from this place, for I heard them saying, 'Let us go to Dothan.'"

Joseph found them in Dothan. When they saw him afar off, before he could come near to them, they conspired to kill him. And they said to one

another, "Behold, here comes the dreamer. Come, let us kill him and throw him into an old pit, and we shall say, 'A wild beast has devoured him'; and then we shall see what good his dreams are to him."

But Reuben, hearing this, tried to free him from their hands and said, "Do not take his life but throw him into this pit and keep your hands innocent." Now he said this, wishing to save (snatch) him from their hands and to restore him to his father. And so, when Joseph came up to his brothers, they at once stripped him of his coat and threw him into a pit in which there was no water.

And as they sat to eat their bread, they saw some travelers coming from Gilead. So Judas said to his brothers, "What do we gain if we kill our brother? It is better that he be sold." His brothers agreed (gave assent to his words). And when Midianite merchants passed by, they (his brothers) drew him out of the pit and sold him for twenty pieces of silver. The merchants brought him to Egypt.

And Reuben, on returning to the pit, did not find the boy. Going to his brothers, he said, "The boy is not there! Where shall I go?" Then they took Joseph's coat and dipped it in the blood of a kid which they had slain, sending (some men) to bring it to his father and to say, "We have found this; see whether it is your son's coat or not." When his father recognized it, he said, "The coat is my son's; a wild beast has devoured him, a beast has torn Joseph." And rending his garments, he mourned for his son for a long time. All his children assembled to soothe their father's grief, but he refused to be comforted.

### Joseph in Egypt

Joseph accordingly was taken to Egypt, and Potiphar, the commander of the army, an Egyptian, bought him. And the Lord was with Joseph, and he was a successful man (a man doing well in all things); and he lived in the house of his master, who knew well that the Lord was with Joseph. And Joseph found grace in the eyes of his master, and Joseph served him. Put in charge of all his possessions by his master, he managed his house, which was entrusted to him, and everything that had been handed over to him; and the Lord blessed the house of the Egyptian because of Joseph. Now Joseph was of fair appearance and well-favored.

. . .

Joseph replied: "What God is about to do, he has shown to Pharaoh. Lo! there shall come seven years of great plenty (fertility) throughout all the land of Egypt, which seven other years of great barrenness shall follow: famine shall consume all the land. Accordingly now let the king seek out a man wise and diligent and put him in charge of the land of Egypt; and let him appoint overseers through all districts; and let all the grain be stored up under the power of Pharaoh and kept in the cities."

He said to Joseph, "You will be over my house, and all the people shall obey (according to) the command of your mouth." And he took his ring from his hand and gave it into Joseph's hand.

. . .

And Joseph was the chief man in the land of Egypt, and at his will grain was sold to the people. And when his brothers had bowed down to him and he had recognized them, he spoke roughly as if toward strangers, asking them, "Where do you come from?" And they replied, "From the land of Canaan to buy food." And yet, while he himself recognized his brothers, he was not recognized by them.

And Joseph could no longer control himself although many (attendants) stood by him, so that he gave instructions that all should go out of doors and that no outsider should be present when he made himself known to his brothers. Weeping, he raised his voice and said to his brothers, "I am Joseph; is my father still alive?" His brothers in their excessive fear could not answer him. Then Joseph said to them kindly, "Come near to me." And when they had come near he said, "I am Joseph, your brother, whom you sold into Egypt. Do not fear or reproach yourselves that you sold me hither, for it was for your survival (safety) that God sent me before you into Egypt. Hasten and go down to my father and (you will) say to him, 'Thus says your son Joseph: God has made me lord of all the land of Egypt. Come down to me, do not delay; and you will dwell in the land of Goshen, and you will be near me, and your sons and the sons of your sons, your sheep and your flocks and everything that you own.'"

Jacob set out with all that he had and sent Judas before him to Joseph. Joseph made ready his chariot and went to meet his father; and seeing him, he fell upon his neck and embraced him weeping. And his father said to Joseph, "Now I shall die happy, for I have seen your face."

After this Joseph brought his father in to the king and set him before him. Jacob blessed the king and was asked by him, "How many are the years of your life?" He answered, "The years of my sojourn (on earth) are one hundred and thirty, few and hard (evil)." And after he had blessed the king, he went forth. So Joseph gave his father and brothers property (a possession) in Egypt in the choicest part of the land, as Pharaoh had commanded.

## CONTENTS

The Merrill Latin Tape Program includes an introductory section on Latin pronunciation and twenty units of study. The principle of frequency of use is the guiding factor in order of presentation in the Revised Editions. The revised order in the text has resulted in slight breaks in the sequence of the tape program. The following breakdown of the contents of the reels is offered for the teacher's quick reference.

<i>for use with</i>	<i>Reel</i>	<i>Side</i>	<i>Unit</i>	<i>Content</i>
Introduction	I	1	Intro.	PRONUNCIATION (vowels, consonants, diphthongs)
Lesson 1	I	1	1	FIRST CONJUGATION (present infinitive, present stem, present active)
Lesson 11	I	2	4	THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS (present active)
Lesson 11	II	1	7	PERFECT ACTIVE (all conjugations)
Lesson 14	I	2	2	SECOND CONJUGATION (present stem, present, imperfect active, first and second conjugations)
Lesson 14	II	1	5	THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS (imperfect active)
Lesson 22	I	2	3	FUTURE ACTIVE (first and second conjugations)
Lesson 22	II	1	6	THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS (future active, including third conjugation -iō verbs)
Lesson 23	II	2	8	PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT (all conjugations)
Lesson 28	III	1	12	CASE ENDINGS OF NOUNS (all declensions, including third declension "i" stems)
Lesson 30	II	2	10	PASSIVE VOICE (all perfect tenses of all conjugations)
Lesson 30	III	1	13	PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES AND CASE USES (including ablatives of place, time, manner, accompaniment, means, agent, and locative)
Lesson 31	III	1	11	ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE
Lesson 33	II	2	9	PASSIVE VOICE (first three tenses of all conjugations)

<i>for use with</i>	<i>Reel</i>	<i>Side</i>	<i>Unit</i>	<i>Content</i>
Lesson 40	III	2	14	REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES (including adjectives ending in “er” and “lis” whose superlative is irregular)
Lesson 41	III	2	15	FORMATION AND REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS
Lesson 48	IV	1	16	PARTICIPLES AND INFINITIVES (all four participles, all infinitives except future passive)
Lesson 48	IV	1	17	INDIRECT STATEMENT (basic construction, time relationship of infinitive)
Lesson 53	IV	2	18	HORTATORY SUBJUNCTIVE (positive and negative wishes, present and past time)
Review 3	IV	2	19	PASSAGE FOR COMPREHENSION (Latin-to-English, <u>Proserpina</u> , questions in English)
Review 4	IV	2	20	PASSAGE FOR COMPREHENSION (Latin-to-English, <u>Horatius</u> , questions in English and Latin)



# TEACHER'S NOTES

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

Although some of the books in the following list may no longer be in print, their value as reference works merits their inclusion. Books found by the authors to be especially useful are indicated by an asterisk.

### FOR THE STUDENT

#### I. Roman History, Daily Life and Customs, Literature

- BARROW, R. H. *The Romans*. Baltimore: Penguin Books, 1949.
- BOTSFORD, GEORGE W., and LILLIE S. *A Source Book of Ancient History*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1923.
- \*CALDWELL, WALLACE E. *The Ancient World*. New York: Farrar and Rinehart, Inc., 1937.
- \*CHURCH, ALFRED J. *Roman Life in the Days of Cicero*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1940.
- COOLIDGE, OLIVIA. *Roman People*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1959.
- COWELL, F. R. *The Revolutions of Ancient Rome*. New York: Praeger Paperbacks, 1963.
- FOSTER, GENEVIEVE. *Augustus Caesar's World*. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1947.
- GLOVER, T. R. *The Ancient World*. Baltimore: Penguin Books, 1945.
- GRANT, M. *Roman Literature*. Baltimore: Penguin Books, 1958.
- GUERBER, H. A. *The Story of the Romans*. New York: American Book Co., 1893.
- \*HAAREN, JOHN H., and A. B. POLAND. *Famous Men of Rome*. New York: American Book Co., 1904.
- HALL, JENNIE. *Buried Cities*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1922.
- KIRTLAND, G. B. *One Day in Ancient Rome*. New York: Harcourt, Brace & World, Inc., 1961.
- MOORE, R. W. *The Roman Commonwealth*. London: English Universities Press, Ltd., 1942.
- MYERS, PHILIP VAN NESS. *Ancient History*, Revised Edition. Boston: Ginn and Co., 1904.
- \*SHUMWAY, EDGAR S. *A Day in Ancient Rome*. Boston: D. C. Heath and Co., 1885.
- \*TREBLE, H. A., and K. M. KING. *Everyday Life in Rome in the Time of Caesar and Cicero*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1930.
- WINER, BART. *Life in the Ancient World*. New York: Random House Inc., 1961.

## II. Mythology, Legend, Religion

- CHRIST, HENRY I. *Odyssey of Homer*. New York: Globe Book Co., Inc., 1948.
- COLUM, PADRAIC. *Adventures of Odysseus*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1918.
- COLUM, PADRAIC. *The Golden Fleece*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1920.
- COOLIDGE, OLIVIA. *Greek Myths*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1949.
- \*HERZBERG, MAX S. *Classical Myths*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1935.
- HUTCHINSON, W. M. L. *Orpheus with His Lute*. New York: Longmans, Green & Co., Inc., 1931.
- KINGSLEY, CHARLES. *The Heroes*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1954.
- \*KIRKWOOD, G. M. *A Short Guide to Classical Mythology*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1959.
- LOWREY, JANETTE SEBRING. *In the Morning of the World*. New York: Harper & Bros., Publishers, 1944.
- ROUSE, W. H. D. *Gods, Heroes and Men of Ancient Greece*. New York: New American Library of World Literature, 1957.
- \*SABIN, FRANCES E. *Classical Myths That Live Today*. New York: Silver Burdett and Co., 1927.
- DE SÉLINCOURT, AUBREY. *Odysseus the Wanderer*. New York: Criterion Books, Inc., 1956.

## FOR THE TEACHER

### I. Roman History, Daily Life and Customs, Literature

- ABBOTT, FRANK FROST. *A History and Description of Roman Political Institutions*. Boston: Ginn and Co., 1911. Reprint, New York: Biblio and Tannen, 1963.
- BOAK, ARTHUR E. R. *A History of Rome to 565 A.D.*, Third Edition. The Macmillan Co., 1943.
- BOTSFORD, GEORGE WILLIS. *The Roman Assemblies*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1909.
- CLARKE, M. L. *Rhetoric at Rome*. New York: Barnes and Noble, Inc., 1963.
- HIGHET, G. *The Classical Tradition: Greek and Roman Influences on Western Literature*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1951.
- OMAN, CHARLES. *Seven Roman Statesmen of the Later Republic*. New York: Longmans, Green & Co., Inc., 1902.
- PELHAM, H. F. *Outlines of Roman History*. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1898.
- \*ROBATHAN, DOROTHY. *The Monuments of Ancient Rome*. Rome: L'Erma di Bretschneider, 1950.
- ROBINSON, CHARLES ALEXANDER, JR. *Alexander the Great*. New York: E. P. Dutton & Co., Inc., 1947.
- ROSE, H. J. *A Handbook of Latin Literature* (from the earliest times to the death of St. Augustine). New York: E. P. Dutton & Co., 1954.

- \*SYME, R. *The Roman Revolution*. Oxford University Press: Oxford Paperbacks, 1960. First published 1939.
- TAYLOR, L. R. *Party Politics in the Age of Caesar*. California: University of California Press, 1961.
- \*WILKINS, A. S. *Roman Antiquities*. New York: American Book Co., 1877.
- WILKINSON, L. P. *Golden Latin Artistry*. New York: Cambridge University Press, 1963.

## II. Mythology, Legend, Religion

- FRAZER, SIR JAMES GEORGE. *The New Golden Bough, A New Abridgment of the Classical Work* (edited by Dr. Theodor H. Gaster). New York: Criterion Books, Inc., 1959.
- KERÉNYI, C. *Heroes of the Greeks* (translated by Prof. H. J. Rose). New York: Grove Press, Inc., 1960.
- \*ROSE, H. J. *A Handbook of Greek Mythology*. New York: E. P. Dutton & Co., Inc., 1959.

## FOR BOTH STUDENT AND TEACHER

### I. Roman History, Daily Life and Customs, Literature

- ABBOTT, FRANK FROST. *Society and Politics in Ancient Rome*. New York: Biblo and Tannen, Reprint, 1963. Originally published 1912.
- ALLEN, WILLIAM F. *A Short History of the Roman People*. Boston: Ginn and Co., 1891.
- \*BECKER, W. A. *Gallus or Roman Scenes of the Time of Augustus*, Second Edition (translated by the Reverend Frederick Metcalfe). New York: Longmans, Green & Co., Inc., 1915.
- BOWRA, C. M. *Ancient Greek Literature*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, Galaxy Books, 1960.
- BREASTED, JAMES HENRY. *Ancient Times: A History of the Early World*. New York: Ginn and Co., 1916.
- BRION, M. *Pompeii and Herculaneum* (translated by J. Rosenberg). London: Elek Books Ltd.
- CARCOPINO, JÉRÔME. *Daily Life in Ancient Rome* (edited by Henry T. Rowell, translated by E. O. Lorimer). New Haven: Yale University Press, 1940.
- COWELL, F. R. *Cicero and The Roman Republic*. New York: Random House, Inc., ed. 2, 1962.
- \*COWELL, F. R. *Everyday Life in Ancient Rome*. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1961.
- DAVENPORT, MILLIA. *The Book of Costume*, Vol. II. New York: Crown Publishers, Inc., 1948.
- DAVIS, WILLIAM STEARNS. *Readings in Ancient History: Greece and the East*. New York: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1912.
- DAVIS, WILLIAM STEARNS. *Rome and the West*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1913.
- DAVIS, WILLIAM STEARNS. *A Day in Old Rome*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1925.

- DUFF, J. WIGHT. *A Literary History of Rome in the Silver Age* (ed. 3, edited by A. M. Duff). New York: Barnes & Noble, Inc., 1963. Originally published 1909.
- DUFF, J. WIGHT. *A Literary History of Rome, From the Origins to the Close of the Golden Age*. London: T. Fisher Unwin, Ltd., 1920 (edited by A. M. Duff). New York: Barnes and Noble, 1953.
- EVANS, MARY. *Costume Throughout the Ages*. Philadelphia: J. B. Lippincott Co., 1950.
- FOWLER, W. W. *Rome* (revised by M. P. Charlesworth). Oxford: Home University Library, 1951.
- FRANK, TENNEY. *A History of Rome*. New York: Henry Holt & Co., Inc., 1923.
- FRANK, TENNEY. *Life and Literature in the Roman Republic*. California: University of California Press, 1956. Originally published 1930.
- GEER, GUSSEL M. *Classical Civilization: Rome*. Englewood Cliffs, N. J.: Prentice-Hall, Inc., 1941.
- GIBBON, EDWARD. *Gibbon's The Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire* (abridged by Moses Hadas). New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1962.
- \*SHOWERMAN, GRANT. *Rome and the Romans*. New York: The Macmillan Co., 1934.
- STRACHAN-DAVIDSON, J. L. S. *Cicero and the Fall of the Roman Republic*. New York: G. P. Putnam's Sons, 1894.
- SWAIN, J. W., and W. H. ARMSTRONG. *Peoples of the Ancient World*. New York: Harper & Bros., Publishers, 1959.
- WILCOX, R. TURNER. *The Mode in Footwear*. New York: Charles Scribner's Sons, 1948.
- WILKIN, ROBERT N. *Eternal Lawyer*. New York: Macmillan Co., 1947.

## II. Mythology, Legend, Religion

- ASIMOV, ISAAC. *Words from the Myths*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Co., 1961.
- BULFINCH, THOMAS. *Bulfinch's Mythology*. New York: The Crowell-Collier Publishing Co., 1947.
- BULFINCH, THOMAS. *The Age of Fable*. Greenwich, Connecticut: Fawcett World Library (Premier Book), 1961.
- DUTHIE, ALEXANDER. *The Greek Mythology — A Reader's Handbook*. Edinburgh: Oliver & Boyd, 1961.
- \*GAYLEY, CHARLES MILLS. *The Classic Myths in English Literature and in Art*. New York: Ginn and Co., 1911.
- GLOVER, T. R. *The Conflict of Religions in the Early Roman Empire*. Boston: Beacon Paperbacks, 1960.
- GUERBER, H. A. *Myths of Greece and Rome*. New York: American Book Co., 1893.
- HAMILTON, EDITH. *Mythology*. Boston: Little, Brown and Co., 1942. New York: New American Library, Mentor Books.
- \*JOBES, GERTRUDE. *Dictionary of Mythology-Folklore and Symbols*. New York: The Scarecrow Press, Inc., 1961.
- Larousse Encyclopedia of Mythology* (edited by Felix Guirand). New York: Prometheus Press, 1959.



- MURRAY, ALEXANDER. *Manual of Mythology*. New York: Tudor Publishing Co., 1936.
- \*ROSE, H. J. *Religion in Greece and Rome*. New York: Harper Torchbooks, 1959.
- Standard Dictionary of Folklore, Mythology and Legend*, Vol. I (edited by Maria Leach). New York: Funk and Wagnalls Co., Inc., 1949.

### III. Dictionaries and Reference Books

- ERNOUT A., and A. MEILLET. *Dictionnaire Étymologique de la Langue Latine*. Paris: Librairie C. Klincksieck, 1939.
- HANFORD, S. A. *Langenscheidt's Pocket Latin Dictionary, Latin-English*. New York: Barnes & Noble, Inc., 1955.
- Harper's Dictionary of Classical Literature and Antiquities* (edited by H. T. Peck). New York: Harper & Bros., 1897.
- \*KIDD, D. A. *Collins Latin Gem Dictionary*. London and Glasgow: Collins, 1957.
- LEWIS and SHORT. *New Latin Dictionary*. New York: Oxford University Press, Inc., 1879.
- LEWIS, C. T. *An Elementary Latin Dictionary*. New York: American Book Co., 1915.
- \**The Oxford Companion to Classical Literature*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1940.
- \**The Oxford Classical Dictionary*. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1949.
- SIMPSON, D. P. *Cassell's New Latin Dictionary*. New York: Funk & Wagnalls Co., 1960.
- SMITH, SIR WILLIAM, and J. F. LOCKWOOD. *A Smaller Latin-English Dictionary*, Third Edition. New York: Barnes & Noble, Inc., 1960.
- WARRINGTON, J. *Everyman's Classical Dictionary*. New York: E. P. Dutton and Co., Inc., 1961.
- The New Century Classical Handbook*. New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts, Inc., 1962.
- \*For British and European books, B. H. Blackwell, Ltd., Broad Street, Oxford, England, provides a yearly catalogue which records the standard and best-known books on these subjects, which were in print at the time this catalogue was compiled, together with the latest list price.

### IV. Grammars

- ALLEN and GREENOUGH's *New Latin Grammar* (edited by J. B. Greenough, G. L. Kittredge, A. A. Howard, Benj. L. D'Ooge). Boston: Ginn and Co., 1931.
- BENNETT, CHARLES E. *New Latin Grammar*. Boston: Allyn and Bacon, Inc., 1960.
- GILDERSLEEVE, B. L., and GONZALES LODGE. *Gildersleeve's Latin Grammar*, Third Edition. Boston: D. C. Heath and Co., 1894. Revised and enlarged. New York: St. Martin's Press.
- HUMPHREYS, J. P. *Graphic Latin Grammar Chart*. Columbus, Ohio: Charles E. Merrill Books, Inc., 1961.

- LANE, GEORGE M. *A Latin Grammar*, Revised Edition. New York: American Book Co., 1903.
- WOODCOCK, E. C. *A New Latin Syntax*. Cambridge: Harvard University Press, 1959.

## V. Language

- GRANDGENT, C. E. *Introduction to Vulgar Latin*. New York: Hafner Publishing Co., Reprint, 1962. Originally published 1934.
- GREENOUGH, J. B., and G. L. KITTREDGE. *Words and Their Ways in English Speech*. Boston: Beacon Press, Reprint, 1962.
- JESPERSEN, O. *Growth and Structure of the English Language*. New York: Doubleday & Co., Inc., Anchor Books, 1955.
- KENT, R. G. *Language and Philology*. New York: Cooper Square Publishers. Reprint, 1963.
- PALMER, L. R. *The Latin Language*. London: Faber and Faber, 1961.
- PEI, M. *The Story of Language*. New York: The New American Library, Mentor Books.
- SCHODER, R. V. *Italian Is Easy if . . .* Oxford, Ohio: American Classical League, 1960.









CHARLES E. MERRILL PUBLISHING CO.  
A Bell & Howell Company